

# xPC Target™ 3

## API Guide



**MATLAB®**  
& **SIMULINK®**

## How to Contact The MathWorks



[www.mathworks.com](http://www.mathworks.com)  
[comp.soft-sys.matlab](mailto:comp.soft-sys.matlab@mathworks.com)  
[www.mathworks.com/contact\\_TS.html](http://www.mathworks.com/contact_TS.html)

Web  
Newsgroup  
Technical Support



[suggest@mathworks.com](mailto:suggest@mathworks.com)  
[bugs@mathworks.com](mailto:bugs@mathworks.com)  
[doc@mathworks.com](mailto:doc@mathworks.com)  
[service@mathworks.com](mailto:service@mathworks.com)  
[info@mathworks.com](mailto:info@mathworks.com)

Product enhancement suggestions  
Bug reports  
Documentation error reports  
Order status, license renewals, passcodes  
Sales, pricing, and general information



508-647-7000 (Phone)



508-647-7001 (Fax)



The MathWorks, Inc.  
3 Apple Hill Drive  
Natick, MA 01760-2098

For contact information about worldwide offices, see the MathWorks Web site.

*xPC Target™ API Guide*

© COPYRIGHT 2002–2008 by The MathWorks, Inc.

The software described in this document is furnished under a license agreement. The software may be used or copied only under the terms of the license agreement. No part of this manual may be photocopied or reproduced in any form without prior written consent from The MathWorks, Inc.

FEDERAL ACQUISITION: This provision applies to all acquisitions of the Program and Documentation by, for, or through the federal government of the United States. By accepting delivery of the Program or Documentation, the government hereby agrees that this software or documentation qualifies as commercial computer software or commercial computer software documentation as such terms are used or defined in FAR 12.212, DFARS Part 227.72, and DFARS 252.227-7014. Accordingly, the terms and conditions of this Agreement and only those rights specified in this Agreement, shall pertain to and govern the use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display, and disclosure of the Program and Documentation by the federal government (or other entity acquiring for or through the federal government) and shall supersede any conflicting contractual terms or conditions. If this License fails to meet the government's needs or is inconsistent in any respect with federal procurement law, the government agrees to return the Program and Documentation, unused, to The MathWorks, Inc.

### Trademarks

MATLAB and Simulink are registered trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc. See [www.mathworks.com/trademarks](http://www.mathworks.com/trademarks) for a list of additional trademarks. Other product or brand names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

### Patents

The MathWorks products are protected by one or more U.S. patents. Please see [www.mathworks.com/patents](http://www.mathworks.com/patents) for more information.

## Revision History

July 2002	Online only	New for Version 2 (Release 13)
October 2002	Online only	Updated for Version 2 (Release 13)
September 2003	Online only	Revised for Version 2.0.1 (Release 13SP1)
June 2004	Online only	Revised for Version 2.5 (Release 14)
August 2004	Online only	Revised for Version 2.6 (Release 14+)
October 2004	Online only	Revised for Version 2.6.1 (Release 14SP1)
November 2004	Online only	Revised for Version 2.7 (Release 14SP1+)
March 2005	Online only	Revised for Version 2.7.2 (Release 14SP2)
September 2005	Online only	Revised for Version 2.8 (Release 14SP3)
March 2006	Online only	Revised for Version 2.9 (Release 2006a)
May 2006	Online only	Revised for Version 3.0 (Release 2006a+)
September 2006	Online only	Revised for Version 3.1 (Release 2006b)
March 2007	Online only	Revised for Version 3.2 (Release 2007a)
September 2007	Online only	Revised for Version 3.3 (Release 2007b)
March 2008	Online only	Revised for Version 3.4 (Release 2008a)



## Introduction

### 1

<b>xPC Target™ API versus xPC Target™ COM API</b> . . . . .	<b>1-2</b>
<b>What Is xPC Target™ API?</b> . . . . .	<b>1-4</b>
<b>What Is xPC Target™ COM API?</b> . . . . .	<b>1-6</b>
<b>Required Products</b> . . . . .	<b>1-8</b>

## xPC Target API

### 2

<b>Before You Start</b> . . . . .	<b>2-2</b>
Introduction . . . . .	<b>2-2</b>
Important Guidelines . . . . .	<b>2-2</b>
<b>Visual C Example</b> . . . . .	<b>2-5</b>
Introduction . . . . .	<b>2-5</b>
Directories and Files . . . . .	<b>2-5</b>
Building the xPC Target Application . . . . .	<b>2-7</b>
Creating a Visual C Application . . . . .	<b>2-7</b>
Building a Visual C Application . . . . .	<b>2-12</b>
Running a Visual C xPC Target API Application . . . . .	<b>2-12</b>
Using the xPC Target API C Application . . . . .	<b>2-13</b>
C Code for sf_car_xpc.c . . . . .	<b>2-19</b>

**3**

<b>Before You Start</b> .....	<b>3-2</b>
<b>Example Visual Basic® GUI Using COM Objects</b> .....	<b>3-4</b>
Introduction .....	<b>3-5</b>
Description of Simulink® Water Tank Model .....	<b>3-5</b>
Creating a Simulink® Target Model .....	<b>3-7</b>
Tagging Block Parameters .....	<b>3-8</b>
Tagging Block Signals .....	<b>3-11</b>
Creating the Target Application and Model-Specific COM Library .....	<b>3-14</b>
Model-Specific COM Interface Library (model_nameCOMiface.dll) .....	<b>3-18</b>
Creating a New Microsoft® Visual Basic® Project .....	<b>3-21</b>
Referencing the xPC Target™ COM API and Model-Specific COM Libraries .....	<b>3-22</b>
Creating the Graphical Interface .....	<b>3-27</b>
Setting Properties .....	<b>3-29</b>
Writing Code .....	<b>3-31</b>
Creating the General Declarations .....	<b>3-33</b>
Creating the Load Procedure .....	<b>3-33</b>
Creating Event Procedures .....	<b>3-35</b>
Referencing Parameters and Signals Without Using Tags .....	<b>3-41</b>
Testing the Visual Basic® Application .....	<b>3-45</b>
Building the Visual Basic® Application .....	<b>3-45</b>
Deploying the API Application .....	<b>3-46</b>
Creating a New Visual Basic® Project Using Microsoft® Visual Studio® 7.1 or 8.0 .....	<b>3-47</b>

**xPC Target™ COM API Demos and Scripts**

**4**

<b>Microsoft® Visual Basic® 7.1 (.NET 2003) Demo</b> .....	<b>4-2</b>
Introduction .....	<b>4-2</b>
Before Starting .....	<b>4-3</b>
Accessing the Demo Project Solution .....	<b>4-3</b>

Rebuilding the Demo Project Solution .....	4-4
Using the Demo Executable .....	4-4
<b>Microsoft® Visual Basic® 6.0 Demo</b> .....	4-5
Introduction .....	4-5
Before Starting .....	4-6
Accessing the sf_car_xpc Project .....	4-6
Rebuilding the sf_car_xpc Project .....	4-7
Using the sf_car_xpc Executable .....	4-7
<b>Tcl/Tk Scripts</b> .....	4-8
Introduction .....	4-8
Required Tcl/Tk Software .....	4-9
Using the Demo Scripts .....	4-9

## API Function and Method Reference

# 5

<b>C API Functions</b> .....	5-2
Logging, Scope, and File System Structures .....	5-2
Communications Functions .....	5-3
Target Application Functions .....	5-3
Data Logging Functions .....	5-4
Scope Functions .....	5-5
File System Functions .....	5-7
Target Scope Functions .....	5-8
Monitoring and Tuning Functions .....	5-8
Miscellaneous Functions .....	5-9
<b>COM API Methods</b> .....	5-10
Communication Objects (xPCProtocol) .....	5-10
Scope Objects (xPCScopes) .....	5-11
Target Objects (xPCTarget) .....	5-13
File System Objects (xPCFileSystem) .....	5-15

**API Functions and Methods**

**6**

**xPC Target™ C API Error Messages**

**A**

**Index**



# Introduction

---

Using either the xPC Target™ API dynamic link library (DLL) or the xPC Target component object model (COM) API library, you can create custom applications to control a real-time application running on the target PC. You generate real-time applications from Simulink® models.

xPC Target™ API versus xPC Target™ COM API (p. 1-2)

Briefly describes each library and why you might want to use one library over the other.

What Is xPC Target™ API? (p. 1-4)

Describes the xPC Target API library.

What Is xPC Target™ COM API? (p. 1-6)

Describes the xPC Target COM API library.

Required Products (p. 1-8)

Products from The MathWorks and third-party products you need to use with xPC Target

## **xPC Target™ API versus xPC Target™ COM API**

The xPC Target™ API and xPC Target COM API interfaces provide the same functionality for you to write custom applications. There is no difference in performance or functionality between applications written against either library. Note that the APIs are not threadsafe.

The xPC Target API DLL consists of C functions that you can incorporate into any high-level language application. The xPC Target COM API consists of a suite of interfaces that you can reference while building a graphic user interface (GUI) application. You can incorporate these interfaces using programming environments that work with COM objects. A user can use an application written through either interface to load, run, and monitor an xPC Target application without interacting with MATLAB®. With the xPC Target API, you write the application in a high-level language (such as C, C++, or Java) that works with an xPC Target application; this option requires that you are an experienced programmer. With xPC Target COM API, you use a graphical development environment to create a GUI that works with an xPC Target application. Designed to work with Microsoft® COM, the xPC Target COM API conforms to the component object model standard established by Microsoft.

The xPC Target API is distributed with two dynamic link libraries (DLLs) that make it easier to integrate with various development tools, tailoring the development environment to your needs:

- A function library (xpcapi.dll)
- A component library (xpcapicom.dll)

The following sections describe each library:

- “What Is xPC Target™ API?” on page 1-4
- “What Is xPC Target™ COM API?” on page 1-6

---

**Note** In this book, second-person references apply to those who write the xPC Target API and COM API applications. For example, “You can assign multiple labels to one tag.” Third-person references apply to those who run the xPC Target API and COM API applications. For example, “You can later distribute this executable to users, who can then use the GUI application to work with target applications.”

---

## What Is xPC Target™ API?

The xPC Target™ API consists of a series of C functions that you can call from a C or C++ application. These functions enable you to

- Establish communication between the host PC and the target PC via an Ethernet or serial connection
- Load the target application, a .dlm file, to the target PC
- Run that application on the target PC
- Monitor the behavior of the target application on the target PC
- Stop that application on the target PC
- Unload the target application from the target PC
- Close the connection to the target PC

The `xpcapi.dll` file contains the xPC Target API dynamic link library. It contains over 90 functions that enable run-time linking rather than static linking at compile time. The functions provide all the information and accessibility needed to access the target application. Accessing the xPC Target API DLL is beneficial when you are building applications using development environments such as Microsoft Foundation Class Library/Active Template Library (MFC/ATL), DLL, Win32 (non-MFS) program and DLL, and console programs integrating with third-party product APIs (for example, Altia).

All custom xPC Target API applications must link with the `xpcapi.dll` file (xPC API DLL). Also associated with the dynamic link library is the `xpcinitfree.c` file. This file contains functions that load and unload the xPC Target API. You must build this file along with the custom xPC Target API application.

The documentation reflects the fact that the API is written in the C programming language. However, the API functions are usable from other languages and applications, such as C++ and Java.

---

**Note** To write a non-C application that calls functions in the xPC Target API library, refer to the compiler documentation for a description of how to access functions from a library DLL. You must follow these directions to access the xPC Target API DLL.

---

The following chapters describe the xPC Target API in more detail:

- Chapter 2, “xPC Target API” describes how to create a C xPC Target API application.
- Chapter 5, “API Function and Method Reference” and Chapter 6, “API Functions and Methods” describe the xPC Target C and COM API functions.

## What Is xPC Target™ COM API?

The xPC Target™ COM API is an open environment application program interface designed to work with Microsoft COM and the xPC Target API. The xPC Target COM API provides the same functionality as the xPC Target API. It is a programming layer that sits between you and the xPC Target API. The difference is that while the xPC Target API is a dynamic link library of C functions, the xPC Target COM API dynamic link library is an organized collection of objects, classes, and functions. You access this collection through a graphical development environment such as Microsoft Visual Basic. Using such a graphical development environment, you can create a custom GUI application that can work with one xPC Target application. While the xPC Target API requires you to be an accomplished C or C++ programmer, the xPC Target COM API makes no such demand.

The xPC Target COM API library depends on `xpcapi.dll`, the xPC Target dynamic link library. However, the xPC Target API is independent of the xPC Target COM API.

The xPC Target COM API has the following features:

- A DLL component server library — `xpcapicom.dll` is a component server DLL library COM interface consisting of component interfaces that access the target PC. The COM API library enhances the built-in functionality of a programming language by allowing you to easily access the xPC Target API for rapid development of xPC Target GUI.
- Built on top of the xPC Target API — Via an application such as Visual Basic, `xpcapicom.dll`, using a structured object model hierarchy, provides full access to all the data and methods needed to interface with an xPC Target application. It also enables search functionality and bidirectional browsing capabilities. Generally, you view object models by selecting a type and viewing its members. Using the xPC Target COM API library, you can select a member and view the types to which it belongs.
- Programming language independent — This section describes how to create an xPC Target COM API application using Visual Basic. However, the xPC Target COM API interface is not limited to this third-party product. You can add the COM API library to any development environment that can access COM libraries, such as Visual C++ or Java, as well as scripting languages such as Perl, Python, and Basic.

- Ideal for use with Visual Basic — The xPC Target COM API works well with Visual Basic, and extends the event-driven programming environment of Visual Basic.

See Chapter 3, “xPC Target™ COM API” for a description of how to use the xPC Target COM API library.

## Required Products

Refer to “Required Products” in the *xPC Target™ Getting Started Guide* for a list of the required xPC Target products. In addition, you need the following products:

- **Third-Party Compiler** — Use a third-party compiler to build a custom application that calls functions from the xPC API library. Although the xPC API library is written in C, you can write the application that calls these functions in another high-level language, such as C++. You can use any compiler that can generate code for Win32 systems.

To write a non-C application that calls functions in the xPC Target API library, refer to the compiler documentation for a description of how to access functions from a library DLL. You must follow these directions to access the xPC Target API DLL.

- **Third-Party Graphical Development Environment** — Use a third-party graphical development environment to build a custom application that references interfaces in the xPC COM API library. Layered on top of the xPC API library, the xPC COM API library enables you to write custom applications using a component object model library. You can use any compiler that can work with component object model (COM) objects.



# xPC Target API

---

Before You Start (p. 2-2)

Introduces the xPC Target API.

Visual C Example (p. 2-5)

Describes how to use Microsoft Visual C++ to generate a Visual C application that can download and run an xPC Target application.

## Before You Start

In this section...
“Introduction” on page 2-2
“Important Guidelines” on page 2-2

### Introduction

This chapter describes how to write a custom application using the xPC Target API. This API enables you to write high-level language applications to load an xPC Target application, and run and control it.

Before you start, read this section for important notes on writing custom applications based on the xPC Target API. It is assumed that you already know how to write C or C++ code.

This chapter provides tutorials on how to generate a C application for xPC Target. It also provides some guidelines on using the xPC Target API. Refer to “Visual C Example” on page 2-5 for tutorials that you can follow to create, build, and run a sample Visual C program.

For the xPC Target API function synopses and descriptions, refer to “API Function and Method Reference”.

### Important Guidelines

This section describes some guidelines you should keep in mind before beginning to write xPC Target API applications with the xPC Target API DLL:

- You must carefully match the data types of the functions documented in the API function reference. For C, the API includes a header file that matches the data types.
- To write a non-C application that calls functions in the xPC Target API library, refer to the compiler documentation for a description of how to access functions from a library DLL. You must follow these directions to access the xPC Target API DLL

- If you want to rebuild the model `sf_car_xpc.mdl`, or otherwise use MATLAB, you must have xPC Target Version 2.0 or later. This is the version of xPC Target that comes with Release 13 (MATLAB 6.5) or later.

To determine the version of xPC Target you are currently using, at the MATLAB command line, type

```
xpclib
```

This opens the xPC Target Simulink blocks library. The version of xPC Target should be at the bottom of the window.

- You can work with xPC Target applications with either MATLAB or an xPC Target API application. If you are working with an xPC Target application simultaneously with a MATLAB session interacting with the target, keep in mind that only one application can access the target PC at a time. To move from the MATLAB session to your application, in the MATLAB Command Window, type

```
close(xpc)
```

This frees the connection to the target PC for use by your xPC Target API application. Conversely, you will need to quit your application, or do the equivalent of calling the function `xPCClosePort`, to access the target from a MATLAB session.

- All xPC Target API functions that communicate with the target PC check for time-outs during communication. If a time-out occurs, these functions will exit with the global variable `xPCError` set to either `ECOMTIMEOUT` (serial connections) or `ETCPTIMEOUT` (TCP/IP connections). Use the `xPCGetLoadTimeOut` and `xPCSetLoadTimeOut` functions to get and set the time-out values, respectively.

There are a few things that are not covered in Chapter 5, “API Function and Method Reference” and Chapter 6, “API Functions and Methods” for the individual functions, because they are common to almost all the functions in the xPC Target API. These are

- Almost every function (except `xPCOpenSerialPort`, `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`, `xPCGetLastError`, and `xPCErrorMsg`) has as one of its parameters the integer variable `port`. This variable is returned by `xPCOpenSerialPort` and `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`, and is the placeholder for the communications link

with the target PC. The returned value from these two functions should be used in the other functions to ensure that the proper communications channel is used.

- Almost every function (except `xPCGetLastError` and `xPCErrorMsg`) sets a global error value in case of error. The application obtains this value by calling the function `xPCGetLastError`, and retrieves a descriptive string about the error by using the function `xPCErrorMsg`. Although the actual values of the error numbers are subject to change, a zero value always means that the operation completed without errors, while a nonzero value typically signifies an error condition. Note also that the library resets the error value every time an API function is called; therefore, your application should check the error status as soon as possible after a function call.

Some functions also use their return values (if applicable) to signify that an error has occurred. In these cases as well, you can obtain the exact error with `xPCGetLastError`.

## Visual C Example

### In this section...

“Introduction” on page 2-5

“Directories and Files” on page 2-5

“Building the xPC Target Application” on page 2-7

“Creating a Visual C Application” on page 2-7

“Building a Visual C Application” on page 2-12

“Running a Visual C xPC Target API Application” on page 2-12

“Using the xPC Target API C Application” on page 2-13

“C Code for sf\_car\_xpc.c” on page 2-19

### Introduction

This release includes an example using the xPC Target API to create a Win32 console application written in C. You can use this example as a template to write your own application.

Before you start, you should have an existing xPC Target application that you want to load and run on a target PC. The following tutorials use the target application `sf_car_xpc.dlm`, built from the Simulink model `sf_car_xpc.mdl`, which models an automatic transmission control system. The automatic transmission control system consists of modules that represent the engine, transmission, and vehicle, with an additional logic block to control the transmission ratio. User inputs to the model are in the form of throttle (%) and brake torque (pound-foot). You can control the target application through MATLAB with the Simulink External Model interface, or through a custom xPC Target API application, which you can create using the tutorials in this chapter.

### Directories and Files

This directory contains the C source of a Win32 console application that serves as an example for using the xPC Target API. The necessary `sf_car_xpc` files are in the directory

C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api

Filename	Description
VisualBasic\Models\ - sf_car_xpc\sfc_car_xpc.mdl	Simulink model for use with xPC Target
VisualBasic\Models\ - sf_car_xpc\sfc_car_xpc.dlm	Target application compiled from Simulink model
VisualC\sfc_car_xpc.dsp	Project file for API application
sf_car_xpc.c	Source code for API application
VisualC\sfc_car_xpc.exe	Compiled API application
VisualBasic\Models\ - xpcapi.dll	xPC Target API functions for all programming languages. Place this file in one of the following, in order of preference: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Directory from which the application is loaded</li> <li>• Windows system directory</li> </ul>

The necessary xPC Target API files are in the directory

C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api

You will need the files listed below for creating your own API application with Microsoft Visual C++.

Filename	Description
xpcapi.h	Mapping of data types between xPC Target API and Visual C
xpcapiconst.h	Symbolic constants for using scope, communication, and data-logging functions
xpcinitfree.c	C functions to upload API from xpcapi.dll
xpcapi.dll	xPC Target API functions for all programming languages

## Building the xPC Target Application

The tutorials in this chapter use the prebuilt xPC Target application

```
C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\  
xpc\api\VisualC\sf_car_xpc.dlm
```

You can rebuild this application for your example:

- 1 Create a new directory under your MathWorks directory. For example,

```
D:\mwd\sf_car_xpc2
```

- 2 Create a Simulink model and save to this directory. For example,

```
sf_car_xpc2.mdl
```

- 3 Build the target application with Real-Time Workshop® and Microsoft Visual C++. The target application file `sf_car_xpc2.dlm` is created.

## Using Another C/C++ Compiler

The tutorials in this chapter describe how to create and build C applications using Microsoft Visual C++. However, to build an xPC Target API C application, you can use any C/C++ compiler capable of generating a Win32 application. You will need to link and compile the xPC Target API application along with `xpcinitfree.c` to generate the executable. The file `xpcinitfree.c` contains the definitions for the files in the xPC Target API and is located at

```
C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api
```

## Creating a Visual C Application

This tutorial describes how to create a Visual C application. It is assumed that you know how to write C applications. Of particular note when writing xPC Target API applications,

- Call the function `xPCInitAPI` at the start of the application to load the functions.
- Call the function `xPCFreeAPI` at the end of the application to free the memory allocated to the functions.

To create a C application with a program such as Microsoft Visual C++,

- 1 From the previous tutorial, change directory to the new directory. This is your working directory. For example,

```
D:\mwd\sfc_car_xpc2
```

- 2 Copy the files `xpcapi.h`, `xpcapi.dll`, `xpcapiconst.h`, and `xpcintfree.c` to the working directory. For example,

```
D:\mwd\sfc_car_xpc2
```

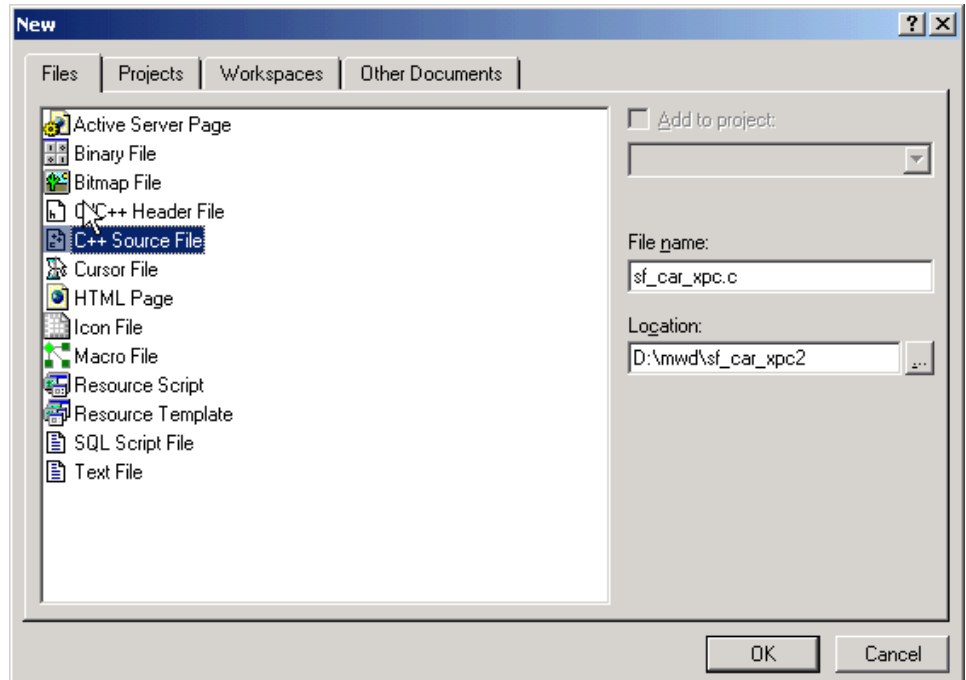
- 3 Click the **Start** button, choose the **Programs** option, and choose the **Microsoft Visual C++** entry. Select the **Microsoft Visual C++** option.

The Microsoft Visual C++ application is displayed.

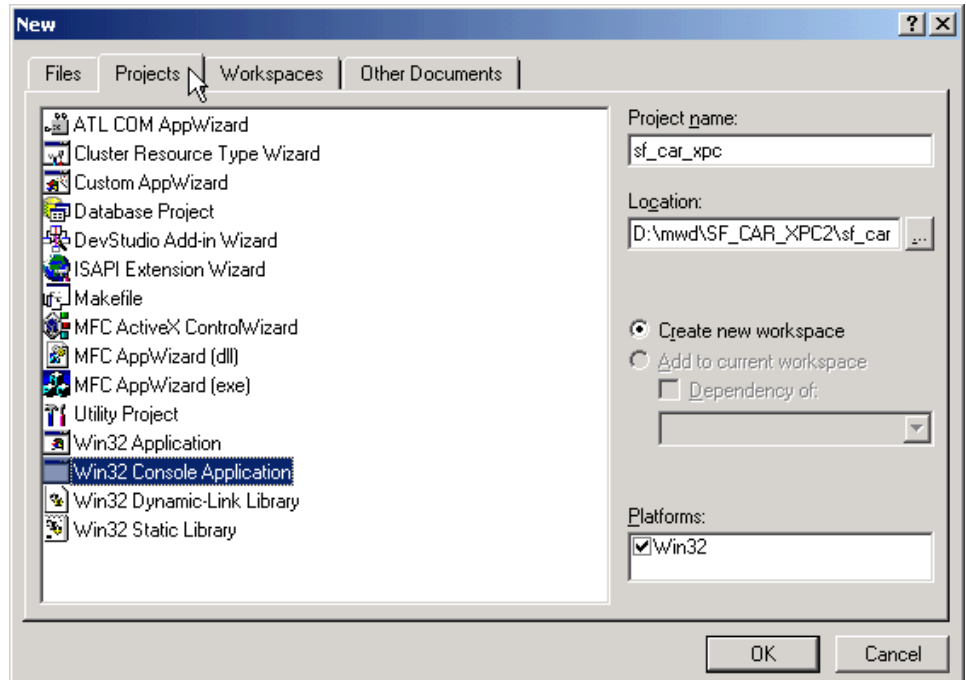
- 4 From the **File** menu, click **New**.

- 5 At the New dialog, click the **File** tab.





- 6** In the left pane, select **C++ Source File**. In the right, enter the name of the file. For example, `sf_car_xpc.c`. Select the directory. For example, `C:\mwd\sfc_car_xpc2`.
- 7** Click **OK** to create this file.
- 8** Enter your code in this file. For example, you can enter the contents of `sf_xpc_car.c` into this file.
- 9** From the **File** menu, click **New**.
- 10** At the New dialog, click the **Projects** tab.



- 11** In the left pane, select **Win32 Console Application**. On the right, enter the name of the project. For example, `sf_car_xpc`. Select the working directory from step 1. For example, `C:\mwd\sf_car_xpc2`.
- 12** To create the project, click **OK**.  
A Win32 Console Application dialog is displayed.
- 13** To create an empty project, select **An empty project**.
- 14** Click **Finish**.
- 15** To confirm the creation of an empty project, click **OK** at the following dialog.
- 16** To add the C file you created in step 7, from the **Project** menu, select the **Add to Project** option and select **Files**.
- 17** Browse for the C file you created in step 7. For example,

```
D:\mwd\sfc_car_xpc2\sfc_car_xpc.c
```

Click **OK**.

- 18** Browse for the `xpcinitfree.c` file. For example, `D:\mwd\xpcinitfree.c`. Click **OK**.

---

**Note** The code for linking in the functions in `xpcapi.dll` is in the file `xpcinitfree.c`. You must compile and link `xpcinitfree.c` along with your custom application for `xpcapi.dll` to be properly loaded.

---

- 19** If you did not copy the files `xpcapi.h`, `xpcapi.dll`, and `xpcapiconst.h` into the working or project directory, you should either copy them now, or also add these files to the project.

- 20** From the **File** menu, click **Save Workspace**.

When you are ready to build your C application, go to “Building a Visual C Application” on page 2-12.

### Placing the Target Application File in a Different Directory

The `sf_car_xpc.c` file assumes that the xPC Target application file `sf_car_xpc.dlm` is in the same directory as `sf_car_xpc.c`. If you move that target application file (`sf_car_xpc.dlm`) to a new location, change the path to this file in the API application (`sf_car_xpc.c`) and recompile the API application. The relevant line in `sf_car_xpc.c` is in the function `main()`, and looks like this:

```
xPCLoadApp(port, ".", "sf_car_xpc"); checkError("LoadApp: ");
```

The second argument (`"."`) in the call to `xPCLoadApp` is the path to `sf_car_xpc.dlm`. The `"."` indicates that the files `sf_car_xpc.dlm` and `sf_car_xpc.c` are in the same directory. If you move the target application, enter its new path and rebuild the xPC Target API application.

## Building a Visual C Application

This tutorial describes how to build the Visual C application from the previous tutorial, or to rebuild the example executable `sf_car_xpc.exe`, with Microsoft Visual C++:

- 1** To build your own application using the xPC Target API, ensure that the files `xpcapi.h`, `xpcapi.dll`, `xpcapiconst.h`, and `xpcinitfree.c` are in the working or project directory.
- 2** If Microsoft Visual C++ is not already running, click the **Start** button, choose the **Programs** option, and choose the **Microsoft Visual C++** entry. Select the **Microsoft Visual C++** option.
- 3** From the **File** menu, click **Open**.  
  
The Open dialog is displayed.
- 4** Use the browser to select the project file for the application you want to build. For example, `sf_car_xpc.dsp`.
- 5** If a corresponding workspace file (for example, `sf_car_xpc.dsw`) exists for that project, a dialog prompts you to open that workspace instead. Click **OK**.
- 6** Build the application for the project. From the **Build** menu, select either the **Build** `project_name.exe` or **Rebuild All** option.

Microsoft Visual C++ creates a file named `project_name.exe`, where `project_name` is the name of the project.

When you are ready to run your Visual C Application, go to “Running a Visual C xPC Target API Application” on page 2-12.

## Running a Visual C xPC Target API Application

Before starting the API application `sf_car_xpc.exe`, ensure the following:

- The file `xpcapi.dll` must either be in the same directory as the xPC Target API application executable, or it must be in the Windows system directory (typically `C:\windows\system` or `C:\winnt\system32`) for global access. The xPC Target API application depends on this file, and will not run if the

file is not found. The same is true for other applications you write using xPC Target API functions.

- The compiled target application `sf_car_xpc.dlm` must be in the same directory as the xPC Target API executable. Do not move this file out of this directory. Moving the file requires you to change the path to the target application in the API application and recompile, as described in “Building a Visual C Application” on page 2-12.

## Using the xPC Target API C Application

Any xPC Target API application requires you to have a working target PC running at least xPC Target Version 2.0 (Release 13).

This tutorial assumes that you are using the xPC Target API application `sf_car_xpc.exe` that comes with xPC Target. In turn, `sf_car_xpc.exe` expects that the xPC Target application is `sf_car_xpc.dlm`.

If you are going to run a version of `sf_car_xpc.exe` that you compiled yourself using the `sf_car_xpc.c` code that comes with xPC Target, you can run that application instead. Ensure that the following files are in the same directory:

- `sf_car_xpc.exe`, the xPC Target API executable
- `sf_car_xpc.dlm`, the xPC Target application to be loaded to the target PC
- `xpcapi.dll`, the xPC Target API dynamic link library

If you copy this file to the Windows system directory, you do not need to provide this file in the same directory.

## How to Run the `sf_car_xpc` Executable

- 1 Create an xPC Target boot disk with a serial or network communication. If you use serial communications, set the baud rate to 115200. Otherwise, create the boot disk as directed in xPC Target Getting Started.
- 2 Start the target PC with the xPC Target boot disk.

The target PC displays messages like the following in the top rightmost message area.

System: Host-Target Interface is RS232 (COM1/2)

or

System: Host-Target Interface is TCP/IP (Ethernet)

- 3** If you have downloaded target applications to the target PC through MATLAB, in the MATLAB window, type

```
close(xpc)
```

This command disconnects MATLAB from the target PC and leaves the target PC ready to connect to another client.

- 4** On the host PC, open a DOS window. Change directory to

```
C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api\VisualC
```

If you are running your own version of `sf_car_xpc.exe`, change to the directory that contains the executable and xPC Target application. For example,

```
D:\mwd\sfc_car_xpc2
```

- 5** From that DOS window, enter the command to start the demo application on the host PC and download the target application to the target PC.

The syntax for the demo command is

```
sf_car_xpc {-t IPAddress:IpPort|-c COMport}
```

If you set up the xPC Target boot disk to use TCP/IP, then give the target PC's IP address and IP port as arguments to `sf_car_xpc`, along with the option `-t`. For example, at the DOS prompt, type

```
sf_car_xpc -t 192.168.0.1:22222
```

If you set up the xPC Target boot disk to use RS-232, give the serial port number as a command-line option. Note that indexing of serial ports starts from 0 instead of 1. For example, if you are using serial communication from COM port 1 on the host PC, type

```
sf_car_xpc -c 0
```

On the host PC, the demo application displays the following message:

```

*-----*
*           xPC Target API Demo: sf_car_xpc.           *
*                                                     *
* Copyright (c) 2000 The MathWorks, Inc. All Rights Reserved. *
*-----*
Application sf_car_xpc loaded. SampleTime 0.001 StopTime: -1
R Br Th G VehSpeed VehRPM
-----
N  0  0  0   0.000   1000.000

```

The relevant line here is the last one, which displays the status of the application. The headings are as follows:

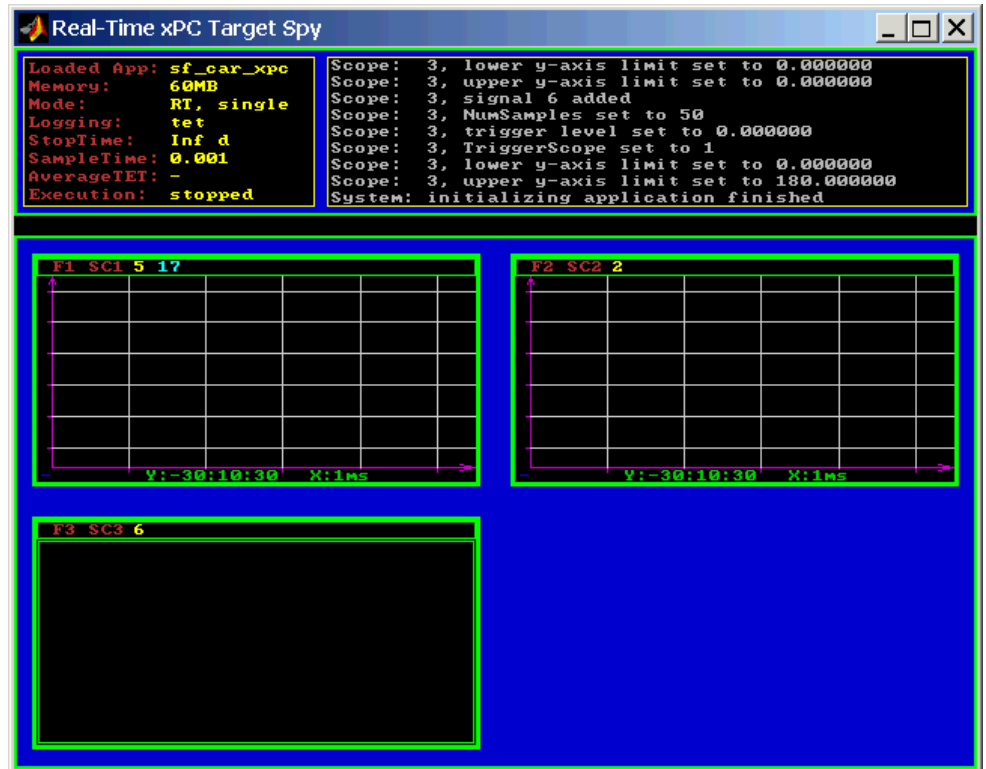
<b>R</b>	The status of the target application: R if running, N if stopped
<b>Br</b>	The brake torque; legal values range from 0 to 4000
<b>Th</b>	The throttle as a percentage (0 - 100) of the total
<b>G</b>	Gear the vehicle is in (ranges between 1 and 4)
<b>VehSpeed</b>	Speed of the vehicle in miles per hour
<b>VehRPM</b>	Revolutions per minute of the vehicle engine (0 to 6000)

From this screen, various keystrokes control the target application. The following list summarizes these keys:

<b>Key</b>	<b>Action</b>
<b>s</b>	Start or stop the application, as appropriate.
<b>T</b>	Increase the throttle by 1 (does not go above 100).
<b>t</b>	Decrease the throttle by 1 (does not go below 0).
<b>B</b>	Increase the brake value by 20 (does not go above 4000). Note that a positive value for the brake automatically sets the throttle value to 0, and a positive value for the throttle automatically sets the brake value to 0.
<b>b</b>	Decrease the brake value by 20 (does not go below 0).
<b>Q or Ctrl+C</b>	Quit the application.

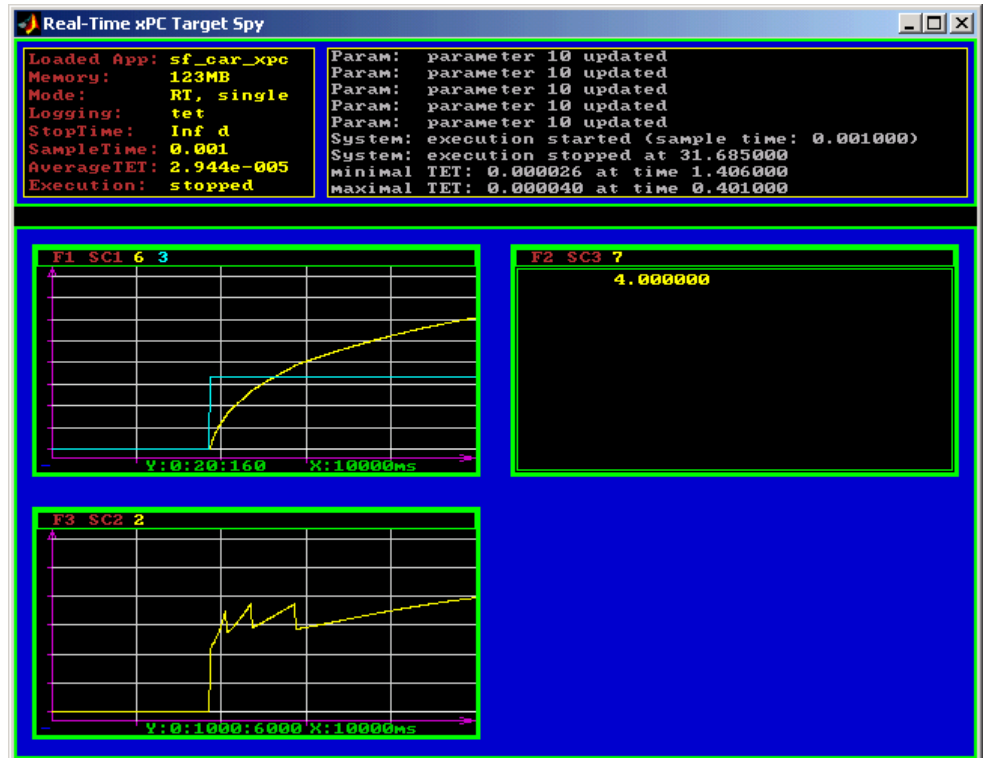


The target PC displays the following messages and three scopes.



6 Hold down the **Shift** key and hold down **T** until the value of  $T_h$  reaches 100.

7 Press **s** to start the application.



The first scope (SC1) shows the throttle rising to a maximum value of 100 and the vehicle speed gradually increasing. The third scope (SC3) shows the vehicle RPM. Notice the changes in the vehicle RPM as the gears shift from first to fourth gear as displayed in the third numerical scope (SC2).

8 When you are done testing the demo application, type **Q** or **Ctrl+C**.

The demo application is disconnected from the target PC, so you can reconnect to MATLAB.

## C Code for sf\_car\_xpc.c

This section contains the C code for the sf\_car\_xpc.c application:

```
/* File:      sf_car_xpc.c
 * Abstract:  Demonstrates the use of the xPC Target C-API in Human-Machine
 *           interaction. This file generates a Win32 Console application,
 *           which when invoked loads the sf_car_xpc.dlm compiled application
 *           on to the xPC Target PC.
 *
 *           To build the executable, use the Visual C/C++ project
 *           sf_car_xpc.dsp.
 *
 * Copyright 2000-2004 The MathWorks, Inc.
 */

/* Standard include files */
#include <stdio.h>
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <limits.h>
#include <ctype.h>
#include <conio.h>
#include <windows.h>

/* xPC Target C-API specific includes */
#include "xpcapi.h"
#include "xpcapiconst.h"

#define SERIAL 0
#define TCPIP 1

/* max and min are defined by some compilers, so we wrap them in #ifndef's */
#ifndef max
#define max(a, b) (((a) > (b)) ? (a) : (b))
#endif
#ifndef min
#define min(a, b) (((a) < (b)) ? (a) : (b))
#endif

/* Global Variables */
int mode = TCPIP, comPort = 0;
```

```
int port;
int thrPID, brakePID, rpmSID, speedSID, gearSID;
char *ipAddress, *ipPort, *pathToApp = NULL;

/* Function prototypes */
double getParam(int parIdx);
void setParam(int parIdx, double parValue);
void findParam(char *block, char *param, int *id);
void findSignal(char *sig, int *id);

void Usage(void);
void cleanUp(void);
void checkError(char *str);
void processKeys(void);
void parseArgs(int argc, char *argv[]);
int str2Int(char *str);

/* Function: main =====
 * Abstract: Main function for the sf_car_xpc demo */
int main(int argc, char *argv[]) {
    printf("\n"
           "-----*\n"
           "          xPC Target API Demo: sf_car_xpc.          *\n"
           "-----*\n"
           "          Copyright (c) 2000 The MathWorks, Inc. All Rights Reserved. *\n"
           "-----*\n"
           "\n");

    parseArgs(argc, argv);
    atexit(cleanUp);
    /* Initialize the API */
    if (xPCInitAPI()) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Could not load api\n");
        return -1;
    }

    if (mode == SERIAL)
        port = xPCOpenSerialPort(comPort, 0);
    else if (mode == TCP/IP)
```

```

        port = xPCOpenTcpIpPort(ipAddress, ipPort);
    else {
        fprintf(stderr, "Invalid communication mode\n");
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }
    checkError("PortOpen: ");

    xPCLoadApp(port, ".", "sf_car_xpc"); checkError("LoadApp: ");
    printf("Application sf_car_xpc loaded, SampleTime: %g StopTime: %g\n\n",
        xPCGetSampleTime(port), xPCGetStopTime(port));
    checkError(NULL);

    findParam("Throttle", "Value", &thrPID);
    findParam("Brake", "Value", &brakePID);
    findSignal("Engine/rpm", &rpmSID);
    findSignal("Vehicle/mpg", &speedSID);
    findSignal("shift_logic/p1", &gearSID);

    processKeys();                /* Heart of the application */

    if (xPCIsAppRunning(port)) {
        xPCStopApp(port);
    }
    return 0;
} /* end main() */

/* Function: processKeys =====
 * Abstract: This function reads and processes the keystrokes typed by the
 *          user and takes action based on them. This function runs for most
 *          of the program life.                                          */
void processKeys(void) {
    int    c = 0;
    double throttle, brake;

    throttle = getParam(thrPID);
    brake    = getParam(brakePID);
    fputs("\nR   Br   Th G   VehSpeed   VehRPM  \n", stdout);
    fputs("  -   ----  - -   -   -   -   \n", stdout);
    while (1) {
        if (_kbhit()) {

```

```
c = _getch();
switch (c) {
    case 't':
        if (throttle)
            setParam(thrPID, --throttle);
        break;
    case 'T':
        if (brake)
            setParam(brakePID, (brake = 0));
        if (throttle < 100)
            setParam(thrPID, ++throttle);
        break;
    case 'b':
        setParam(brakePID, (brake = max(brake - 200, 0)));
        if (brake)
            setParam(thrPID, (throttle = 0));
        break;
    case 'B':
        if (throttle)
            setParam(thrPID, (throttle = 0));
        setParam(brakePID, (brake = min(brake + 200, 4000)));
        break;
    case 's':
    case 'S':
        if (xPCIsAppRunning(port)) {
            xPCStopApp(port); checkError(NULL);
        } else {
            xPCStartApp(port); checkError(NULL);
        }
        break;
    case 'q':
    case 'Q':
        return;
        break;
    default:
        fputc(7, stderr);
        break;
}
} else {
    Sleep(50);
```

```

    }
    printf( "\r%c  %4d  %3d  %1d  %10.3f  %10.3f",
           (xPCIsAppRunning(port) ? 'Y' : 'N'),
           (int)brake, (int)throttle,
           (int)xPCGetSignal(port, gearSID),
           xPCGetSignal(port, speedSID),
           xPCGetSignal(port, rpmSID));
}
} /* end processKeys() */

/* Function: Usage =====
 * Abstract: Prints a simple usage message. */
void Usage(void) {
    fprintf(stdout,
           "Usage: sf_car_xpc {-t IPAddress:IpPort|-c num}\n\n"
           "E.g.: sf_car_xpc -t 192.168.0.1:22222\n"
           "E.g.: sf_car_xpc -c 1\n\n");
    return;
} /* end Usage() */

/* Function: str2Int =====
 * Abstract: Converts the supplied string str to an integer. Returns INT_MIN
 *           if the string is invalid as an integer (e.g. "123string" is
 *           invalid) or if the string is empty. */
int str2Int(char *str) {
    char *tmp;
    int  tmpInt;
    tmpInt = (int)strtol(str, &tmp, 10);
    if (*str == '\0' || (*tmp != '\0')) {
        return INT_MIN;
    }
    return tmpInt;
} /* end str2Int */

/* Function: parseArgs =====
 * Abstract: Parses the command line arguments and sets the state of variables
 *           based on the arguments. */
void parseArgs(int argc, char *argv[]) {
    if (argc != 3) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Insufficient command line arguments.\n\n");
    }
}

```

```

        Usage();
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }
    if (strlen(argv[1]) != 2 ||
        strchr("-/", argv[1][0]) == NULL ||
        strchr("tTcC", argv[1][1]) == NULL) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Unrecognized Argument %s\n\n", argv[1]);
        Usage();
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }
    mode = tolower(argv[1][1]) == 'c' ? SERIAL : TCP/IP;
    if (mode == SERIAL) {
        int tmpInt;
        if ((tmpInt = str2Int(argv[2])) > INT_MIN) {
            comPort = tmpInt;
        } else {
            fprintf(stderr, "Unrecognized argument %s\n", argv[2]);
            Usage();
        }
    } else {
        char *tmp;
        ipAddress = argv[2];
        if ((tmp = strchr(argv[2], ':')) == NULL) {
            /* memory need not be freed as it is allocated only once, will *
            * hang around till app ends. */
            if ((ipPort = malloc(6 * sizeof(char))) == NULL) {
                fprintf(stderr, "Unable to allocate memory");
                exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
            }
            strcpy(ipPort, "22222");
        } else {
            *tmp = '\0';
            ipPort = ++tmp;
        }
    }
    return;
} /* end parseArgs() */

/* Function: cleanUp =====
 * Abstract: Called at program termination to exit in a clean way. */

```



```
void cleanUp(void) {
    xPCClosePort(port);
    xPCFreeAPI();
    return;
} /* end cleanUp() */

/* Function: checkError =====
 * Abstract: Checks for error by calling xPCGetLastError(); if an error is
 *          found, prints the appropriate error message and exits.      */
void checkError(char *str) {
    char errMsg[80];
    if (xPCGetLastError()) {
        if (str != NULL)
            fputs(str, stderr);
        xPCErrorMsg(xPCGetLastError(), errMsg);
        fputs(errMsg, stderr);
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }
    return;
} /* end checkError() */

/* Function: findParam =====
 * Abstract: Wrapper function around the xPCGetParamIdx() API call. Also
 *          checks to see if the parameter is not found, and exits in that
 *          case.                                                       */
void findParam(char *block, char *param, int *id) {
    int tmp;
    tmp = xPCGetParamIdx(port, block, param);
    if (xPCGetLastError() || tmp == -1) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Param %s/%s not found\n", block, param);
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }
    *id = tmp;
    return;
} /* end findParam() */

/* Function: findSignal =====
 * Abstract: Wrapper function around the xPCGetSignalIdx() API call. Also
 *          checks to see if the signal is not found, and exits in that
 *          case.                                                       */
```

```
void findSignal(char *sig, int *id) {
    int tmp;
    tmp = xPCGetSignalIdx(port, sig);
    if (xPCGetLastError() || tmp == -1) {
        fprintf(stderr, "Signal %s not found\n", sig);
        exit(EXIT_FAILURE);
    }
    *id = tmp;
    return;
} /* end findSignal() */

/* Function: getParam =====
 * Abstract: Wrapper function around the xPCGetParam() API call. Also checks
 *           for error, and exits if an error is found.                               */
double getParam(int parIdx) {
    double p;
    xPCGetParam(port, parIdx, &p);
    checkError("GetParam: ");
    return p;
} /* end getParam() */

/* Function: setParam =====
 * Abstract: Wrapper function around the xPCSetParam() API call. Also checks
 *           for error, and exits if an error is found.                               */
void setParam(int parIdx, double parValue) {
    xPCSetParam(port, parIdx, &parValue);
    checkError("SetParam: ");
    return;
} /* end setParam() */

/** EOF sf_car_xpc.c **/
```

# xPC Target™ COM API

---

Before You Start (p. 3-2)

Provides some xPC Target™ COM API guidelines that you should be aware of before starting to create your application.

Example Visual Basic® GUI Using COM Objects (p. 3-4)

Provides procedures that describe how to write a graphical user interface (GUI) from within Microsoft® Visual Basic® using the xPC Target COM API objects.

## Before You Start

This chapter describes how to write a custom application using the xPC Target™ COM API. This COM API enables you to write COM applications to load, run, and control an xPC Target application.

Before you start, read this section for guidelines on writing custom applications based on the xPC Target COM API. You do not need to be a seasoned C or C++ programmer to follow the procedures in this chapter, or to write custom applications with the xPC Target COM API. You should, however, have some rudimentary programming knowledge.

This chapter provides procedures on how to create xPC Target COM API applications using Microsoft® Visual Basic®:

- The procedures in this example use the model `xpctank.mdl`. If you want to rebuild this model, or otherwise use the MATLAB® software, you must have xPC Target software version 2.0 or higher.

To determine which version of the software you are currently using, at the MATLAB command line, type

```
xpclib
```

This opens the xPC Target Simulink® blocks library. The xPC Target software version of should be at the bottom of the window.

- You can work with xPC Target applications with either the MATLAB software or an xPC Target COM API application. If you are working with an xPC Target application using an xPC Target COM API application simultaneously with a MATLAB session interacting with the target, keep in mind that only one application can access the target PC at a time. To move from the MATLAB session to your application, in the MATLAB Command Window, type

```
close(xpc)
```

This frees the connection to the target PC for use by your xPC Target COM API application. Conversely, you will need to have your COM API application call the `Close` method to enable access to the target from a MATLAB session.

- Although you are building an xPC Target COM API application, you still need to access the `xpcapi.dll`. When distributing the xPC Target COM API application, place this file in one of the following, in order of preference:
  - Directory from which application is loaded
  - Windows® system directory

## Example Visual Basic® GUI Using COM Objects

### In this section...

“Introduction” on page 3-5

“Description of Simulink® Water Tank Model” on page 3-5

“Creating a Simulink® Target Model” on page 3-7

“Tagging Block Parameters” on page 3-8

“Tagging Block Signals” on page 3-11

“Creating the Target Application and Model-Specific COM Library” on page 3-14

“Model-Specific COM Interface Library (model\_nameCOMiface.dll)” on page 3-18

“Creating a New Microsoft® Visual Basic® Project” on page 3-21

“Referencing the xPC Target™ COM API and Model-Specific COM Libraries” on page 3-22

“Creating the Graphical Interface” on page 3-27

“Setting Properties” on page 3-29

“Writing Code” on page 3-31

“Creating the General Declarations” on page 3-33

“Creating the Load Procedure” on page 3-33

“Creating Event Procedures” on page 3-35

“Referencing Parameters and Signals Without Using Tags” on page 3-41

“Testing the Visual Basic® Application” on page 3-45

“Building the Visual Basic® Application” on page 3-45

“Deploying the API Application” on page 3-46

“Creating a New Visual Basic® Project Using Microsoft® Visual Studio® 7.1 or 8.0” on page 3-47

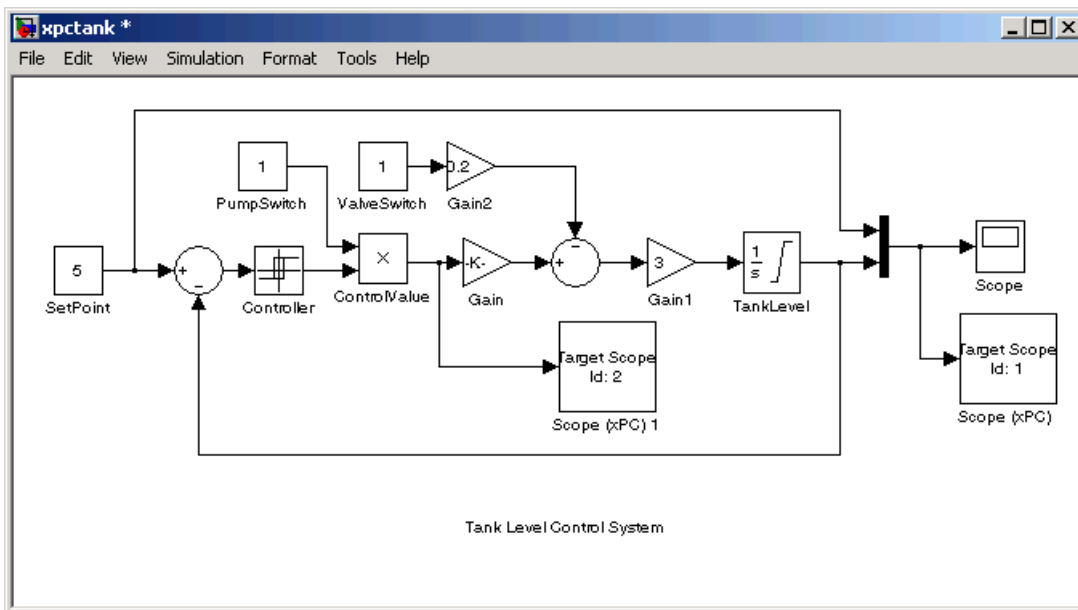
## Introduction

For demonstration purposes this chapter uses the Simulink® model `xpctank.mdl` and requests that you enter tags for signals and parameters to create the Simulink model `xpc_tank1.mdl`. You will then build the real-time target application `xpc_tank1.dlm` and the GUI `xpc_tank1_COM.exe` application using the xPC Target™ COM API library and Microsoft® Visual Basic®.

**Note** These topics assume that you know how to create projects and forms in Microsoft Visual Basic, and that you are familiar with the concept of automatic code completion. For further details on Microsoft Visual Basic, refer to your Microsoft® product documentation.

## Description of Simulink® Water Tank Model

The xPC Target software includes the Simulink model `xpctank.mdl`. This is a model of a water tank with a pump, drain, and valve controller.



**TankLevel** — The water level in the tank is modeled using a limited integrator named TankLevel.

**PumpSwitch** — The pump can be turned off manually to override the action of the controller. This is done by setting PumpSwitch to 0. When PumpSwitch is 1, the controller can use the control valve to pump water into the tank.

**ValveSwitch (drain valve)** — The tank has a drain valve that allows water to flow out of the tank. Think of this as water usage or consumption that reduces the water level. This behavior is modeled with the constant block named ValveSwitch, the gain block Gain2, and a summing junction. The minus sign on the summing junction has the effect of producing a negative flow rate (drain), which reduces the water level in the tank.

When ValveSwitch is 0 (closed), the valve is closed and water cannot flow out of the tank. When ValveSwitch is 1 (open), the valve is open and the water level is reduced by draining the tank.

**Controller** — The controller is very simple. It is a bang-bang controller and can only maintain the selected water level by turning the control valve (pump valve) on or off. A water level set point defines the desired median water level. Hysteresis enables the pump to avoid high-frequency on and off cycling. This is done using symmetric upper and lower bounds that are offsets from the median set point. As a result, the controller turns the control valve (pump valve) on whenever the water level is below the set point minus the offset. The summing junction compares this lower bound against the tank water level to determine whether or not to open the control valve. If the pump is turned on (PumpSwitch is 1) water is pumped into the tank. When the water level reaches or exceeds the set point plus the upper bound, the controller turns off the control valve. When the water level reaches this boundary, water stops pumping into the tank.

**Scope blocks** — A standard Simulink Scope block is added to the model for you to view signals during a simulation. xPC Target Scope blocks are added to the model for you to view signals while running the target application. Scope id:1 displays the actual water level and the selected water level in the tank. Scope id:2 displays the control signals. Both scopes are displayed on the target PC using a scope of type target.



The `xpctank.mdl` model is built entirely from standard Simulink blocks and scope blocks from the xPC Target software. It does not differ in any way from a model you would normally use with the software.

## Creating a Simulink® Target Model

A target application model is a Simulink model that describes your physical system and its behavior. You use this model to create a real-time target application, and you use this model to select the parameters and signals you want to connect to a custom graphical interface.

You do not have to modify this model when you use it with Virtual Reality Toolbox™ or other third-party graphical elements.

Create a target application model before you tag block parameters and block signals to create a custom graphical interface:

- 1 In the MATLAB® Command Window, type

```
xpctank
```

A Simulink model for a water tank opens. This model contains a set of equations that describe the behavior of a water tank and a simple controller.

The controller regulates the water level in the tank. This model contains only standard Simulink blocks and you use it to create the xPC Target application.

- 2 From the **File** menu, click **Save as** and enter a new filename. For example, enter `xpc_tank1` and then click **OK**.

---

**Note** If you save your own copy of `xpctank`, be sure to be in the directory that contains that model before calling it from the MATLAB window.

---

Your next task is to mark the block properties and block signals. See “Tagging Block Parameters” on page 3-8 and “Tagging Block Signals” on page 3-11. Building an xPC Target application that has been tagged generates a model-specific COM library, `model_nameifaceCOM.dll`, which you can later reference when writing your xPC Target COM API application.

## Tagging Block Parameters

Tagging parameters in your Simulink model enables you to generate a model-specific COM library to provide access to model parameter IDs via the xPC Target COM API library. These interface blocks contain the parameters you connect to control devices (such as sliders) in your model. Tagging parameters makes it easier for you to refer to these parameters later, when you write your xPC Target COM API application.

---

**Note** If you do not tag parameters before you generate your Simulink model, you must specify model parameters manually. See “Referencing Parameters and Signals Without Using Tags” on page 3-41 for this procedure.

---

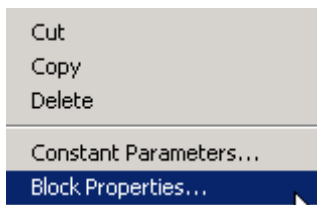
This procedure uses the model `xpc_tank1.mdl` (or `xpctank.mdl`) as an example. See “Creating a Simulink® Target Model” on page 3-7.

---

**Note** The `xpctank` model contains tags from the example for creating custom user interfaces in the xPC Target User’s Guide . As you follow the procedures in this section and the section “Tagging Block Signals” on page 3-11, you should remove any existing tags before adding the new tags.

---

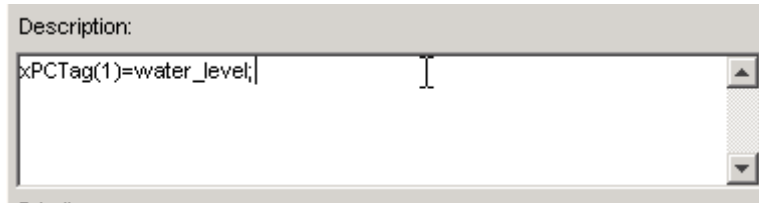
- 1 Open a Simulink model. For example, in the MATLAB window type `xpc_tank1` or `xpctank`.
- 2 Point to a Simulink block, and then right-click. For example, right-click the SetPoint block.
- 3 From the menu, click **Block Properties**.



A block properties dialog box opens.

- 4** In the **Description** box, delete the existing tag and enter a tag to the parameters for this block.

For example, the SetPoint block is a constant with a single parameter that selects the level of water in the tank. Enter the tag shown below.



The tag has the following format:

```
xPCTag(1, . . . index_n)= label_1 . . . label_n;
```

- `index_n` — Index of a block parameter. Begin numbering parameters with an index of 1.
- `label_n` — Name for a block parameter to connect to a property for the parameter you tag in the model. Separate the labels with a space, not a comma.

`label_1...label_n` must consist of the same identifiers as those used by C/C++ to name functions, variables, and so forth. Do not use names like `-foo`.

You can assign multiple labels to one tag, such as

```
xPCTag(1)=label1;xPCTag(1)=label2;
```

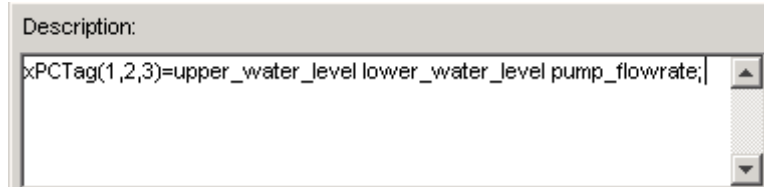
You might want to assign multiple labels if you want to tag a parameter for different purposes. For example, you can tag a parameter to create a model-specific COM library. You might also want to tag a parameter to enable the function `xpcs1iface` to generate a user interface template model.

You can also issue one tag definition per line, such as

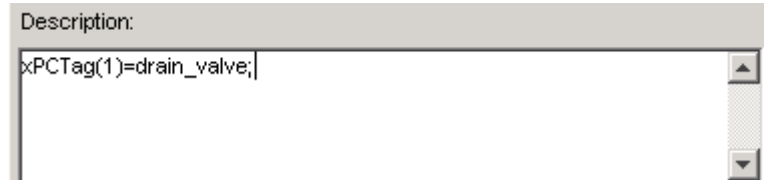
```
xPCTag(1)=label1;
xPCTag(2)=label2;
```

- 5** Repeat step 4 for the remaining parameters you want to tag.

For example, for the Controller block, enter the tag



For the PumpSwitch and ValveSwitch blocks, enter the tags



To tag a block with four properties, use the following syntax:

```
xPCTag(1,2,3,4)=label_1 label_2 label_3 label_4;
```

To tag a block with at least four properties for the second and fourth properties, use the following syntax:

```
xPCTag(2,4)=label_1 label_2;
```

**6** From the **File** menu, click **Save as**. Enter a filename for your model. For example, enter

```
xpc_tank1
```

Your next task is to tag block signals, if you have not already done so; then, create the model. See “Tagging Block Signals” on page 3-11.

## Tagging Block Signals

Tagging signals in your Simulink model enables you to generate a model-specific COM library to provide access to model signal IDs via the COM API library. These interface blocks contain the signals you connect to display devices (such as labels) in your model. Tagging signals makes it easier for you to refer to these signals later, when you write your xPC Target COM API application. After you tag signals, you will be ready to build your xPC Target application.

---

**Note** If you do not tag signals before you generate your Simulink model, you must specify model signals manually. See “Referencing Parameters and Signals Without Using Tags” on page 3-41 for this procedure.

---

This procedure uses the model `xpc_tank1.mdl` (or `xpctank.mdl`) as an example. See “Creating a Simulink® Target Model” on page 3-7.

---

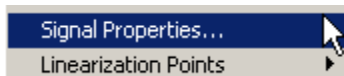
**Note** The `xpctank` model contains tags from the example for creating custom user interfaces in the xPC Target User’s Guide. As you follow the procedures in this section and the section “Tagging Block Parameters” on page 3-8, you should remove any existing tags before adding the new tags.

---

Notice that you cannot select signals on the output ports of any virtual blocks such as Subsystem and Mux blocks. Also, you cannot select signals on any function call signal output ports.

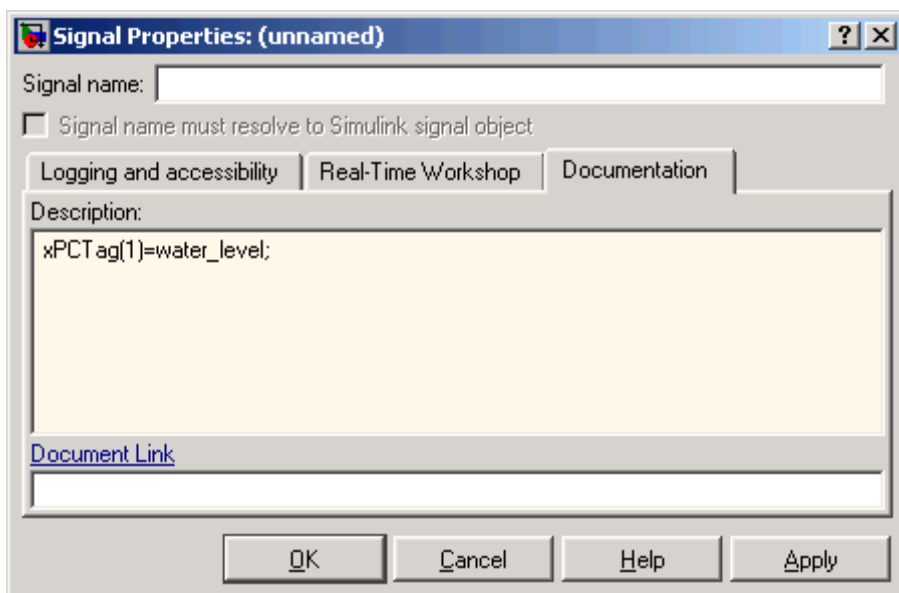
**1** Open a Simulink model. For example, in the MATLAB window type `xpc_tank1` or `xpctank`.

- 2 Point to a Simulink signal line, and then right-click.
- 3 From the menu, click **Signal Properties**. For example, right-click the signal line from the TankLevel block.



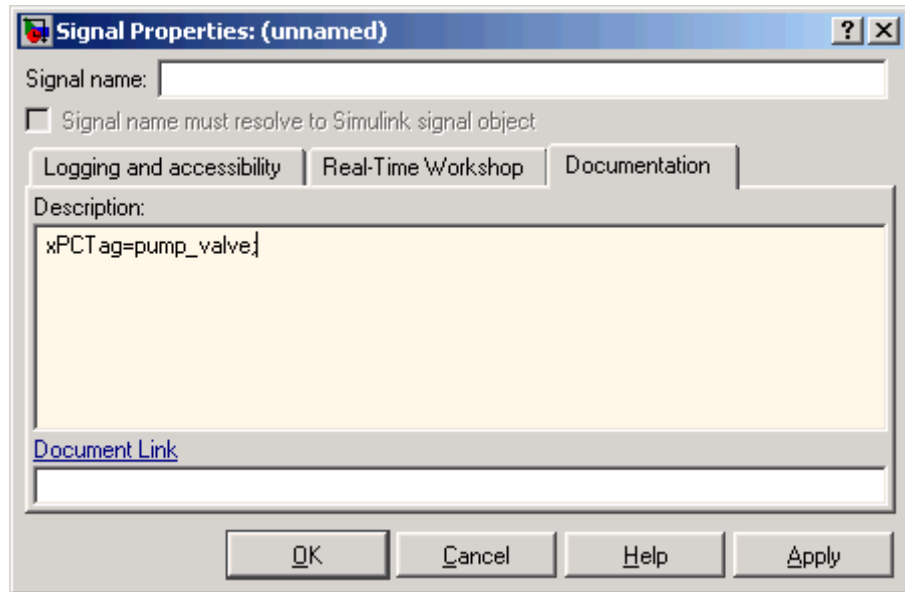
A Signal Properties dialog box opens.

- 4 Select the **Documentation** tab.



- 5 In the **Description** box, enter a tag to the signals for this line.  
For example, the TankLevel block is an integrator with a single signal that indicates the level of water in the tank. Enter the tag shown.
- 6 Repeat step 5 for the remaining signals you want to tag.

For example, for the signal from the ControlValve block, enter the tag pump\_valve.



Signal tags have the following syntax:

```
xPCTag(1, . . . index_n)=label_1 . . . label_n;
```

- `index_n` — Index of a signal within a vector signal line. Begin numbering signals with an index of 1.
- `label_n` — Name for a signal to connect to a property for the signal you tag in the model. Separate the labels with a space, not a comma.

`label_1 . . . label_n` must consist of the same identifiers as those used by C/C++ to name functions, variables, and so forth. Do not use names like `-foo`.

For single-dimension ports, the following syntax is also valid:

```
xPCTag=label;
```

You can assign multiple labels to one tag, such as

```
xPCTag(1)=label1;xPCTag(1)=label2;
```

You might want to assign multiple labels if you want to tag a signal for different purposes. For example, you can tag a signal to create a model-specific COM library. You might also want to tag a signal to enable the function `xpcsliface` to generate a user interface template model.

You can also issue one tag definition per line, such as

```
xPCTag(1)=label1;  
xPCTag(2)=label2;
```

To tag a signal line with four signals (port dimension of 4) use the following syntax:

```
xPCTag(1,2,3,4)=label_1 label_2 label_3 label_4;
```

To tag the second and fourth signals in a signal line with at least four signals, use the following syntax:

```
xPCTag(2,4)=label_1 label_2;
```

**7** From the **File** menu, click **Save as**. Enter a filename for your model. For example, enter

```
xpc_tank1
```

Create the target application. See “Creating the Target Application and Model-Specific COM Library” on page 3-14.

## **Creating the Target Application and Model-Specific COM Library**

Use this procedure to create a target application that you want to connect to a GUI application and the model-specific COM interface library (`model_nameCOMiface.dll`).

After you copy a Simulink model and tag the block parameters and block signals, you can create a target application and download it to the target PC.



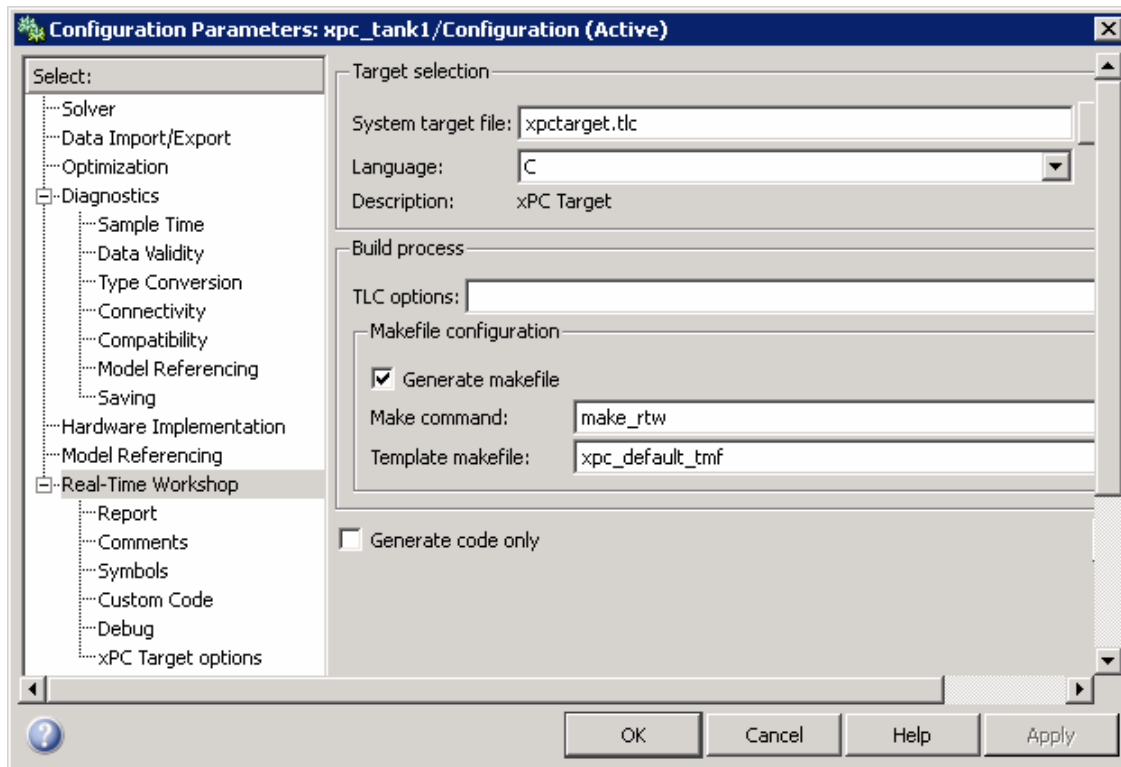
This procedure uses the Simulink model `xpc_tank1.mdl` (or `xpctank.mdl`) as an example (see “Creating a Simulink® Target Model” on page 3-7).

- 1** Start or reset the target PC with an xPC Target boot disk in the floppy drive. Ensure that there is no other application currently loaded on the target PC.
- 2** If this is a new release of the product, ensure that you have configured the host PC with the appropriate settings, including the compiler.
- 3** In the MATLAB window, type `xpc_tank1` or `xpctank`.

A Simulink window opens with the `model.mdl` file.

- 4** From the **Simulation** menu, click **Configuration Parameters**.

The Configuration Parameters dialog is displayed for the model.



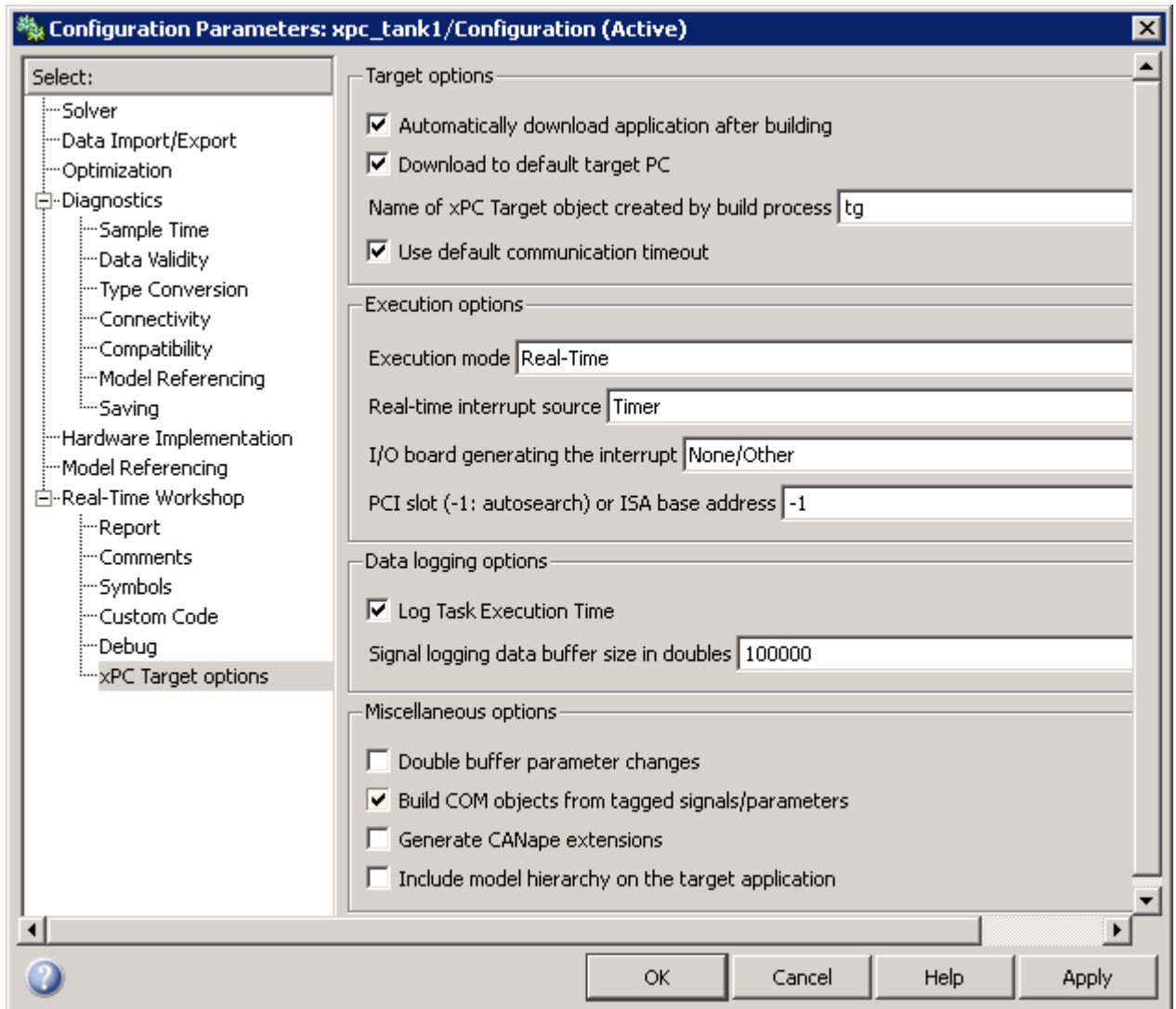
**5** In the left pane, click the **Real-Time Workshop** node.

**6** In the **Target selection** section, click the **Browse** button at the **RTW system target file** list. Click `xpctarget.tlc` if it is not already selected, then click **OK**.

**7** In the left pane, click the **xPC Target options** node.

The **xPC Target options** pane is displayed.

- 8 Select the **Build COM objects from tagged signals/parameters** check box.



- 9 Click the **Solver** node.

The **Solver** pane is displayed.

- 10** Check that the **Stop time** is long enough for you to interact with the target application.
- 11** Click **OK** to save and exit.
- 12** From the **Tools** menu, point to **Real-Time Workshop**, and then click **Build model**.

The Real-Time Workshop®, xPC Target, and a third-party C compiler create the target application `xpc_tank1.dlm` and the COM object library `xpc_tank1COMiface.dll`. The target application is also downloaded to the target PC.

- 13** If you want, you can close the MATLAB Command Window.

---

**Note** To create the target application and build associated COM objects from the tagged signals and parameters, you must use the Visual C compiler. You cannot use the Watcom compiler to build these COM objects.

---

Your next task is to create a Microsoft Visual Basic API application using COM objects. This API application connects and controls the target application. See “Creating a New Microsoft® Visual Basic® Project” on page 3-21. For more information about model-specific COM interface library, refer to “Model-Specific COM Interface Library (model\_nameCOMiface.dll)” on page 3-18.

## **Model-Specific COM Interface Library (model\_nameCOMiface.dll)**

The generated model-specific COM interface library is a DLL component server library that enhances programming using the xPC Target COM API library. A model-specific COM interface library is specific to the model from which it is generated; do not reference a model-specific library for another model. If you choose not to generate a model-specific COM interface library, refer to “Referencing Parameters and Signals Without Using Tags” on page

3-41 for a description of how to otherwise reference parameters and signals in the xPC Target COM API application.

The mode-specific COM interface library allows users easy access to preselected tagged signals and desired tagged parameters for use in conjunction with the xPC Target COM API xPC Target and xPCScope object signal monitoring and parameter member functions such as `xPCTarget.GetParam`, `xPCTarget.SetParam`, and `xPCTarget.GetSignal`.

The xPC Target COM generated objects are of two types:

- `model_namebio`
- `model_namept`

where `model_name` is the name of the Simulink model. The `model_namebio` type is for tagged block I/O signals and the `model_namept` type is for tagged parameters.

### **Model-Specific COM Signal Object Classes**

Model-specific COM signal classes have two types of members in which you are interested, the `Init` function and class properties. You will find these members in the `model_namebio` class, where `model_name` is the name of your model.

The `Init` function invokes the `Init` method once, passing it the `Ref` property from the `xPCProtocol` class. This method initializes the object to communicate with the appropriate target PC to access the signal identifiers when accessing the object's properties. Refer to the call in the Microsoft Visual Basic code example in "Creating the Load Procedure" on page 3-33.

Each class has a list of properties (specified in the `Tag` syntax in the **Description** field of the signal property). These properties return the xPC Target signal identifiers or signal numbers of the tagged signals. The generated property name is the name specified in the tagged signal description using the following syntax:

```
xPCTag=Property name;
```

For example, in the model `xpc_tank1.mdl`, there are two signal tags in the **Description** field:

- The output from the integrator block labeled TankLevel is tagged `xPCTag=water_level`.
- The output from the multiply block labeled ControlValve is tagged `xPCTag=pump_valve`.

### **Model-Specific COM Parameter Object Classes**

Model-specific COM signal classes have two types of members in which you are interested, the `Init` function and class properties. You will find these members in the `model_namept` class, where `model_name` is the name of your model.

The `Init` function invokes the `Init` method once, passing it as input the `Ref` property from the `xPCProtocol` class. This method initializes the object to communicate with the appropriate target PC to access the parameter identifiers when accessing the object's properties. Refer to the call in the Microsoft Visual Basic code example in “Creating the Load Procedure” on page 3-33.

Each class has a list of properties (specified in the `Tag` syntax in the **Description** field of the block property). These properties return the xPC Target parameter identifiers of the tagged parameters. The generated property name is the name specified in the tagged signal description using the following syntax:

```
xPCTag(1)=Property name;
```

For example, in the model `xpc_tank1.mdl`, there are two parameter tags in the **Description** field:

- The parameter for SetPoint blocks is tagged `xPCTag=set_water_level`;
- The parameters for the Controller block are tagged `xPCTag(1,2,3)=upper_water_level lower_water_level pump_flowrate`;

## Creating a New Microsoft® Visual Basic® Project

The following procedures describe how you can create a Microsoft Visual Basic project to take advantage of the xPC Target COM API to create a custom GUI for the xPC Target application. The procedures build on the `xpctank` (`xpc_tank1`) model you saved earlier (see “Creating the Target Application and Model-Specific COM Library” on page 3-14). The Microsoft Visual Basic environment allows you to interact with your target application using a GUI while the target application is running in real time on the target PC.

The procedures for the following topics apply to Microsoft® Visual Studio® 6.0. To use Microsoft Visual Studio 7.1 or 8.0 instead, see “Creating a New Visual Basic® Project Using Microsoft® Visual Studio® 7.1 or 8.0” on page 3-47.

### 1 Create a new project directory.

From the directory `matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api`, copy the file `xpcapi.dll` (API library) to this new project directory. Alternatively, you can copy the file `xpcapi.dll` into the Windows® system directory.

You do not need to copy `xpcapiCOM.dll` (the COM API library) into the current directory, but ensure that it is registered in your system (see “Registering Dependent Dynamic Link Libraries” on page 3-47.)

### 2 From your MATLAB working directory, copy the files `model_name.dlm` (target application) and `model_nameCOMiface.dll` (model-specific COM library) to the new project directory.

### 3 While in this project directory, open Microsoft Visual Basic. From the **File** menu, click **New Project**.

The New Project dialog box opens.

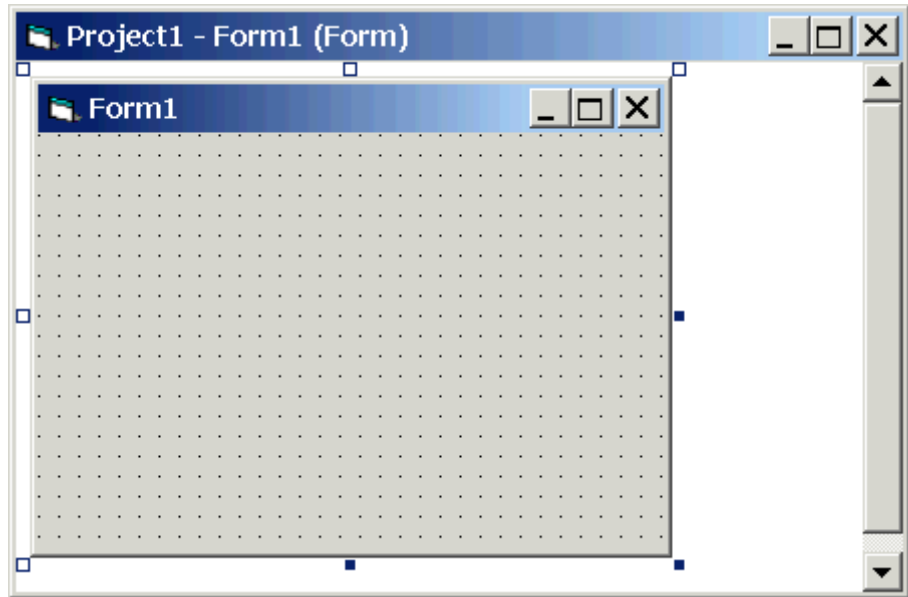
---

**Note** Be sure to open the Microsoft Visual Basic project from the project directory itself, not from Microsoft Visual Basic.

---

- 4** Select **Standard EXE**, and then click **OK**.

The Microsoft Visual Basic Integrated Development Environment opens with a blank form.



- 5** From the **File** menu, click **Save Project As** and enter a filename for the form and the project. For example, for the form, enter

```
xpc_tank1_COM.frm
```

At the project prompt, enter

```
xpc_tank1_COM.vbp
```

## Referencing the xPC Target™ COM API and Model-Specific COM Libraries

You need to reference the xPC Target COM API and model-specific COM libraries so that Microsoft Visual Basic will use them in the current project. Assuming that you created the Visual Basic® project as described in the preceding procedure, reference the library as described in this procedure:



**1** From the **Project** menu, click **References**.

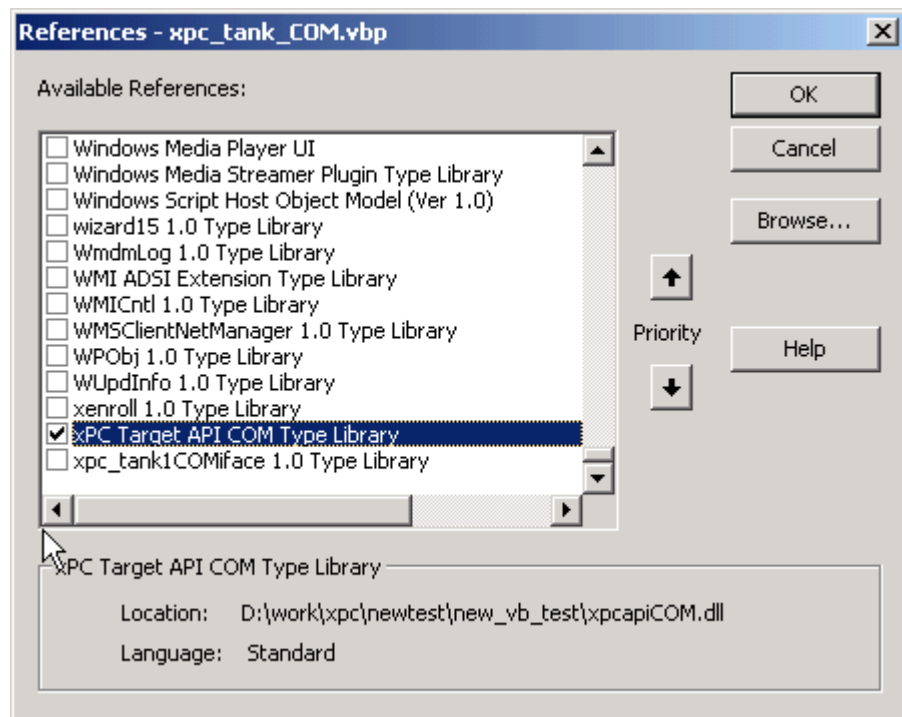
The References dialog box opens.

**2** Select the **COM** tab.

**3** Scroll down the **Component Name** list to the bottom. Select the **xPC Target API COM Type Library** check box.

**4** Click **Select**.

**5** Click **OK**.

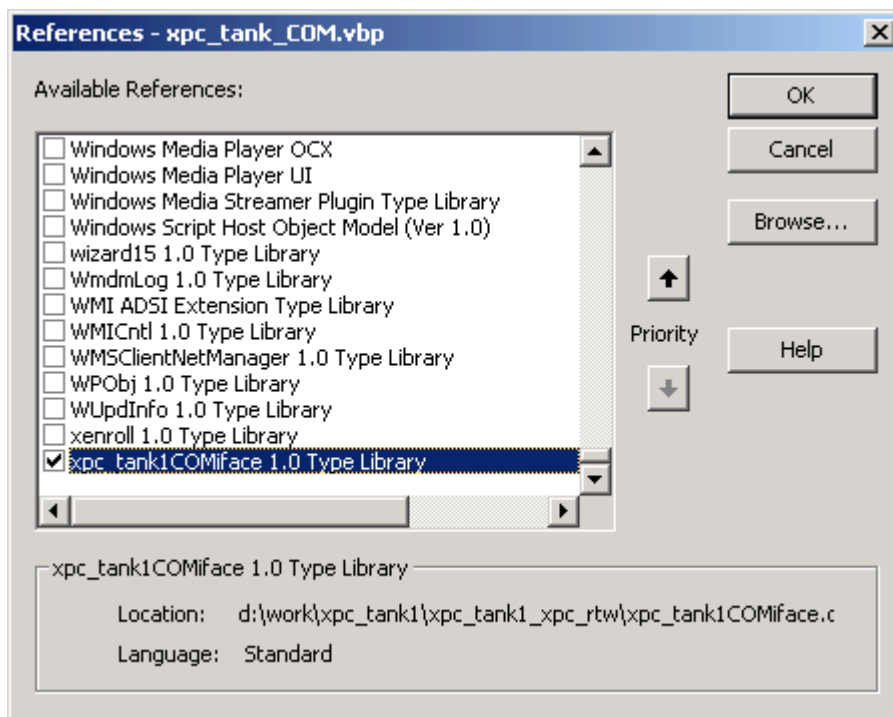


The xPC Target COM API Type library (xpcapiCOM.dll) is now available for use in your project.

- 6 To add the model-specific COM library, click **References** again from the **Project** menu.

The References dialog box opens.

- 7 Scroll to find your model name. Select the check box **xpc\_tank1COMiface 1.0 Type Library**.
- 8 Click **Select**.
- 9 Click **OK**.



The model-specific COM API Type Library (xpc\_tank1COMiface.dll) is now available for use in your project. Sections “Viewing Model-Specific COM Signal Object Classes” on page 3-25 and “Viewing Model-Specific COM Parameter Object Classes” on page 3-26 describe how to look at class objects.

Because the xPC Target COM API is an add-on to Visual Basic, it might help to know a bit about Visual Basic before going much farther with using the COM API. The section “Creating the Graphical Interface” on page 3-27 guides you through using Visual Basic to create a project for the xpctank or (xpc\_tank1) model.

## Viewing Model-Specific COM Signal Object Classes

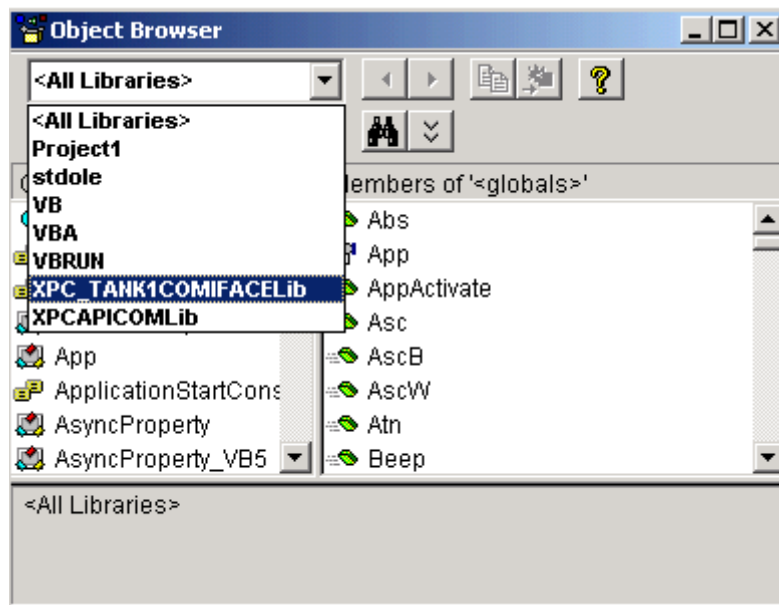
After you create a Visual Basic project and reference the xPC Target COM API and model-specific COM libraries, you can use the Visual Basic Object browser (click the **View** menu and select **Object Browser**) to look at the objects for the xpctankbio or xpc\_tank1bio class:

- 1 From the **View** menu, select **Object Browser**.

A dialog box pops up with a drop-down list containing all the type library information for a project.

- 2 Select the drop-down list for the project/library.

A list of the project libraries appears.



**3** Select `model_nameCOMIFACELib`.

The classes in your model appear.

**4** To view the objects of a class, select that class.

The objects in your class appear.

The `xpctankbio` (or `xpc_tank1bio`) class contains the function `Init` and the two properties

- `water_level`
- `pump_valve`

### Viewing Model-Specific COM Parameter Object Classes

After you create a Visual Basic project and reference the xPC Target COM API and model-specific COM libraries, you can use the Visual Basic Object browser (click the **View** menu and select **Object Browser**) to look at the objects for the `xpctankpt` or `xpc_tank1pt` class:

**1** From the **View** menu, select **Object Browser**.

A dialog box pops up with a drop-down list containing all the type library information for a project.

**2** Select the drop-down list for the project/library.

A list of the project libraries appears.

**3** Select `model_nameCOMIFACELib`.

The classes in your model appear.

**4** To view the objects of a class, select that class.

The objects in your class appear.

The `xpctankpt` (or `xpc_tank1pt`) class contains the method `Init` and the member properties

- pump\_switch
- upper\_water\_level
- lower\_water\_level
- pump\_flowrate
- water\_level
- drain\_valve


## Creating the Graphical Interface

Forms are the foundation for creating the interface of a Visual Basic application. You can use forms to add windows and dialog boxes to your Visual Basic application. You can also use them as containers for items that are not a visible part of the application's interface. For example, you might have a form in your application that holds a timer object.


The first step in building a Visual Basic application is to create the forms that are the basis for your application's interface. Then you create the objects that make up the interface on the forms. This section assumes that you have a Visual Basic project (see “Creating a New Microsoft® Visual Basic® Project” on page 3-21). For this first application, you will use four types of controls from the toolbox:



- Button
- Timer
- Label
- Scrollbar

**1** Open xpc\_tank1\_COM.vbp.

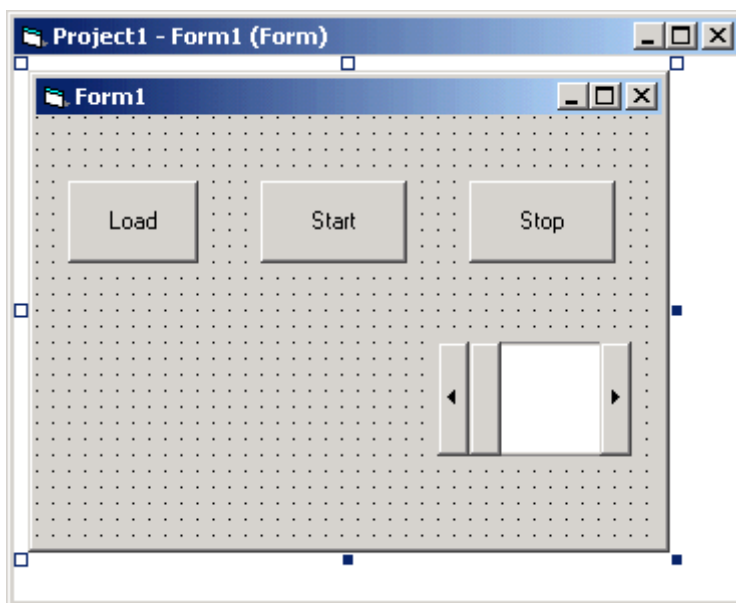
**2** On the left, from the **General** tool panel, click and drag the **Button** icon  to the form to create a button.

**3** Repeat for a second button.

**4** If you want to view signal data on the host, return to the **General** tool panel and click and drag the **Timer** icon  to the form to create a timer.

- 5 If you want to view signal data on the host, add a **Label** control to the form. Return to the **General** tool panel and click and drag the **Label** icon  to the form to create a label.
- 6 If you want to be able to vary the parameter input to the target, return to the **General** tool panel and click and drag the **HScrollBar** icon  to the form.
- 7 Next, name your new form objects. Right-click the first button and select **Properties**. This brings up the Properties dialog box. In the **Caption** box, enter Load. Repeat for the second button, but enter Start. Repeat for the third button, but enter Stop. (If you are unsure about how to work with properties, refer to the procedure “Setting Properties” on page 3-29.) After you name your new form objects and set whatever other parameters you want (for example, if you use a timer you must increase the Interval parameter), you can write the code behind these objects using the Visual Basic code editor window (refer to “Writing Code” on page 3-31).

If you added a scroll bar to your project, it should look similar to the figure below.

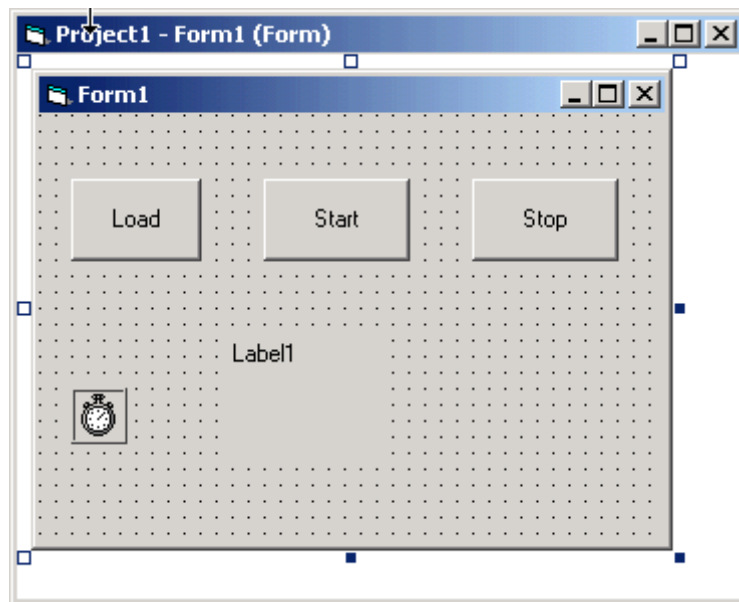


If you added a timer and label to your project, it should look similar to the figure below.

---

**Note** If you add a timer, remember to increase the interval of the timer to a value greater than the default value of 0. Right-click the timer and select **Properties**. This brings up the Properties dialog box. In the **Interval** box, enter a value greater than 0, for example, 100.

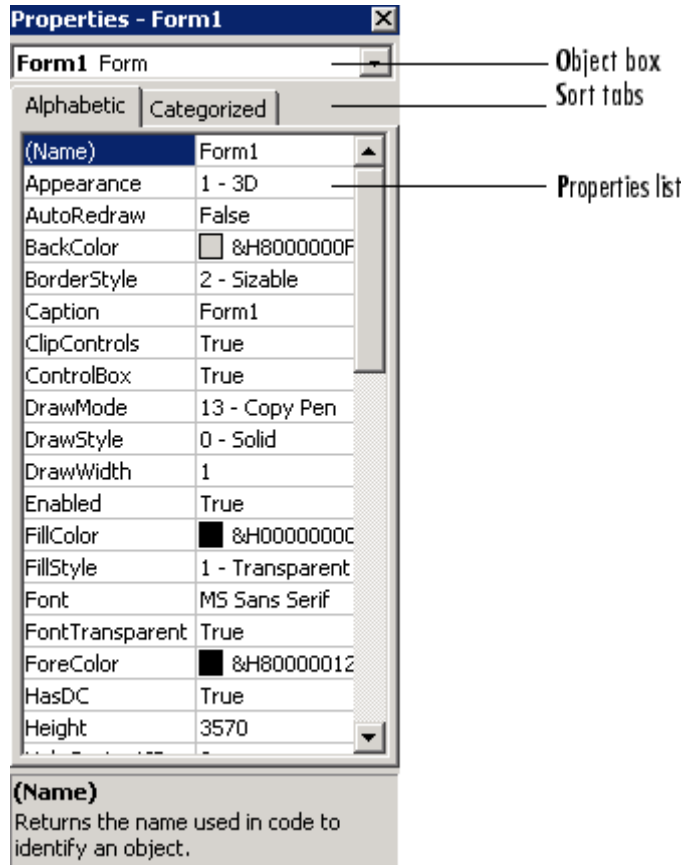
---



## Setting Properties

This procedure describes how to set properties for the Visual Basic objects you created on your form. If you already know how to set properties for Visual Basic objects, proceed to "Writing Code" on page 3-31.

The **Properties** window in the following figure provides an easy way to set properties for all objects on a form. To open the **Properties** window, choose the **Properties Window** command from the **View** menu, click the **Properties Window** button on the toolbar, or use the context menu for the control.



The **Properties** window consists of the following elements:

- Object box — Displays the name of the object for which you can set properties. Click the arrow to the right of the object box to display the list of objects for the current form.



- Sort tabs — Choose an alphabetic listing of properties or a hierarchical view divided by logical categories, such as those dealing with appearance, fonts, or position.
- Properties list — The left column displays all the properties for the selected object. You can edit and view settings in the right column.

To set properties from the **Properties** window,

- 1 From the **View** menu, choose **Properties**, or click the **Properties** button on the toolbar.

The **Properties** window displays the settings for the selected form or control.

- 2 From the properties list, select the name of a property.
- 3 In the right column, type or select the new property setting.

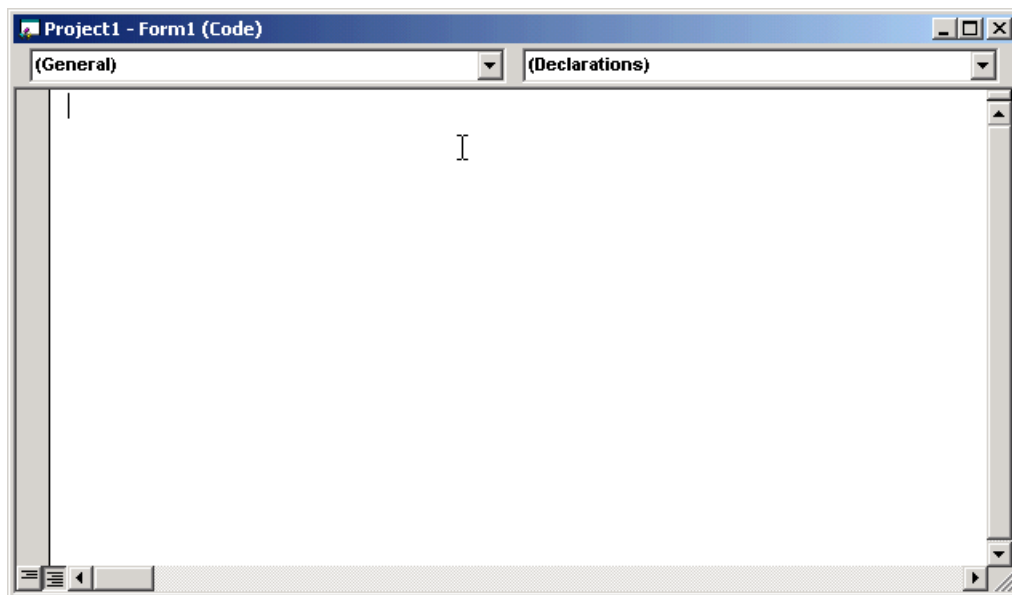
Enumerated properties have a predefined list of settings. You can display the list by clicking the down arrow at the right of the settings box, or you can cycle through the list by double-clicking a list item.

You can also set object properties directly in the code by using the following dot notation: `Object.propertyname=value`.

## Writing Code

The code editor window is where you write Visual Basic code for your application. Code consists of language statements, constants, and declarations. Using the code editor window, you can quickly view and edit any of the code in your application.

The code editor window has three panes. The top leftmost pane is the object list box. It is a dropdown list that contains all the form controls in your project, plus a general section for generic declarations. The top rightmost pane contains a procedure list box. For the selected or active control in the object list box, the procedure list box displays the available procedures, or events. Visual Basic predefines the possible procedures. The third pane contains the code for the Visual Basic application. See the following figure for a sample code editor window.



In the general declarations section, declare a reference to the xPC Target COM objects that you are using to interface with the xPC Target objects. The following are the objects you need to declare:

- `xPCProtocol` — Reference the classes corresponding to the target PC running the target application and initialize the xPC Target API dynamic link library. At a minimum, you must declare this object.
- `xPCTarget` — Reference the classes for interfacing with the target application. At a minimum, you must declare this object.
- `xPCScope` — If the API application requires signal data, reference the class for interfacing with xPC Target scopes. You need to declare a scope if you want to acquire data from scopes or display data on scopes.
- `model_namept` — This is the COM object for tunable model/application parameters.
- `model_namebio` — This is the COM object for model/target application signals.

## Creating the General Declarations

This procedure describes how to create the general object declarations for the xpctank (or xpc\_tank1) model:

- 1 Double-click the form or, from the **View** menu, select **Code**.

The code editor window box opens for the control.

- 2 Select the General object.

- 3 Select **Declarations** in the procedure list box.

A *template* for the declarations procedure is now displayed in the code editor window.

- 4 Enter declarations for the xPC Target COM objects you are using.

```
Public protocol_obj As xPCProtocol
Public target_obj As xPCTarget
Public scope_obj As xPCScopes
```

- 5 Enter declarations for the model-specific COM objects you are using.

```
Public parameters_obj As xpc_tank1pt
Public signals_obj As xpc_tank1bio
```

## Creating the Load Procedure

This procedure describes how to program a load target application procedure for the form. You might or might not want to allow users to download target applications to the target PC. However, if you do want to allow this action, you need to provide a control on the GUI for the user to do so. “Creating Event Procedures to Load Applications” on page 3-36 describes how to provide such a control.

- 1 In the project window, double-click the Form object.

The code editor window opens.

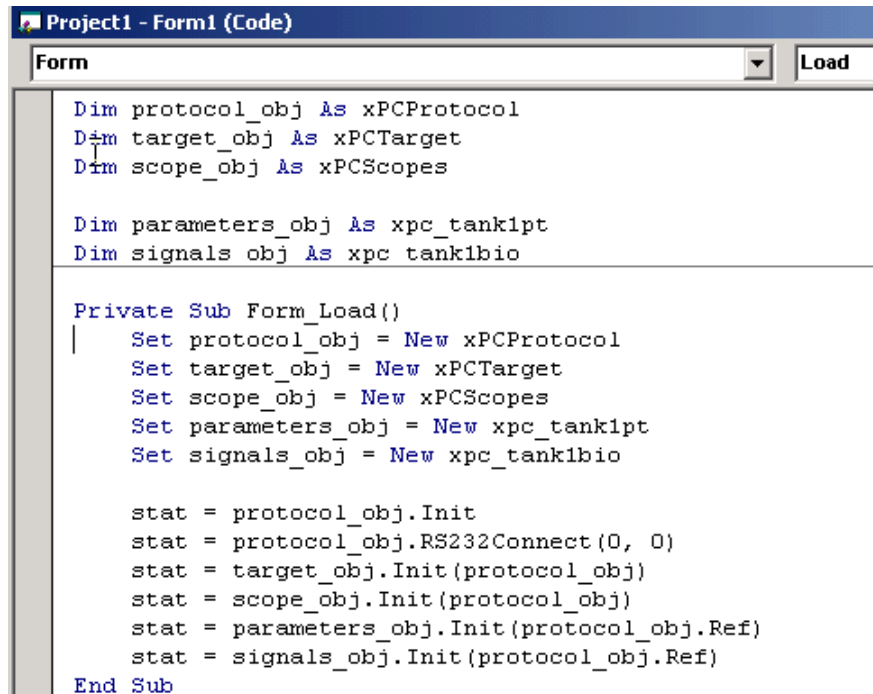
- 2 In the procedure list box, select **Load**.

- 3** Create and initialize the objects for the Load method in the form. Note that the following code also checks that the initialization of the protocol\_obj succeeds. If it does not succeed, an error message is returned and the application will exit.

```
Private Sub Form_Load()  
    Set protocol_obj = New xPCProtocol  
    Set target_obj = New xPCTarget  
    Set scope_obj = New xPCScopes  
    Set parameters_obj = New xpc_tank1pt  
    Set signals_obj = New xpc_tank1bio  
    stat = protocol_obj.Init  
    If stat < 0 Then  
        MsgBox("Could not load api") 'We can no longer continue.  
    End  
    End If  
    stat = protocol_obj.RS232Connect(0, 0)  
    stat = target_obj.Init(protocol_obj)  
    stat = scope_obj.Init(protocol_obj)  
    stat = parameters_obj.Init(protocol_obj.Ref)  
    stat = signals_obj.Init(protocol_obj.Ref)  
End Sub
```

You can add more code to the Load method. This is the minimum code you should enter for this method.

Your code editor window should look similar to the following.



```

Dim protocol_obj As xPCProtocol
Dim target_obj As xPCTarget
Dim scope_obj As xPCScopes

Dim parameters_obj As xpc_tank1pt
Dim signals_obj As xpc_tank1bio

Private Sub Form_Load()
    Set protocol_obj = New xPCProtocol
    Set target_obj = New xPCTarget
    Set scope_obj = New xPCScopes
    Set parameters_obj = New xpc_tank1pt
    Set signals_obj = New xpc_tank1bio

    stat = protocol_obj.Init
    stat = protocol_obj.RS232Connect(0, 0)
    stat = target_obj.Init(protocol_obj)
    stat = scope_obj.Init(protocol_obj)
    stat = parameters_obj.Init(protocol_obj.Ref)
    stat = signals_obj.Init(protocol_obj.Ref)
End Sub

```

## Creating Event Procedures

Code in a Visual Basic application is divided into smaller blocks called *procedures*. Event procedures, such as those you create here, contain code that mainly calls the xPC Target API component methods. For example, when a user clicks a button, that action starts the xPC Target application.

This code is also responsible for the feedback action (such as enabling a timer control, disabling/enabling controls) when an event occurs. An event procedure for a control combines the control's name (specified in the Name property), an underscore (\_), and the event name. For example, if you want a command button named **Command1** to invoke an event procedure when it is clicked, call the procedure `Command1_Click`. The following procedures illustrate how to create event procedures, using the `xpctank` (or `xpc_tank1`) model as an example.

## Creating Event Procedures to Load Applications

This procedure describes how to program the command button **Command1** to load an application to the target PC through a serial connection. Provide a procedure like this to allow users to download target applications to the target PC.

- 1 Double-click the form or, from the **View** menu, select **Code**.
- 2 From the object list box, select the name of an object in the active form. (The *active* form is the form that currently has the focus.) For this example, choose the command button **Command1**.
- 3 In the procedure list box, select the name of an event for the selected object.

Here, the **Click** procedure is already selected because it is the default procedure for a command button.



- 4 To load the target application, enter the path to the target application. If the target application is in the same folder as the API application, enter ".". Enter the name of the target application without the extension.

```
stat = target_obj.LoadApp(".", "xpc_tank1")
```

When you are done, the contents of your code editor window should look similar to the code below:

```
Private Sub Command1_Click()  
    stat = target_obj.LoadApp(".", "xpc_tank1")  
End Sub
```

## Creating Event Procedures to Start and Stop Applications

This procedure describes how to program the command buttons **Command2** and **Command3** to start and stop an application on a target PC:

- 1** If you are not already in the code editor window, double-click the form or, from the **View** menu, select **Code**.
- 2** From the object list box, select the name of an object in the active form. (The *active* form is the form that currently has the focus.) For this example, choose the command button **Command2**.
- 3** In the procedure list box, select the name of an event for the selected object. Here, select the **Click** procedure.
- 4** To start the target application, select the **StartApp** method for the command button **Command2** (this is the button you named **Start**).

```
stat = target_obj.StartApp
```

- 5** To stop the target application, select the **StopApp** method for the command button **Command3** (this is the button you named **Stop**). Be sure to select the **Click** procedure in the procedure list box.

```
stat = target_obj.StopApp
```

When you are done, the contents of your code editor window should look similar to the code below:

```
Private Sub Command2_Click()  
    stat = target_obj.StartApp  
End Sub  
  
Private Sub Command3_Click()  
    stat = target_obj.StopApp  
End Sub
```

## Creating Event Procedures to Vary Input Values

You can provide controls to allow users to vary the parameters of their applications. The **Scroll** procedure is one way of varying input. The following code uses the Visual Basic **HScrollBar** object to vary the `water_level`

parameter. It takes the value from the `HScrollBar` object and sends that value to the target as a parameter change.

---

**Note** This section assumes that you have tagged block parameters and created your own model-specific COM library. Refer to “Getting Parameter IDs with the `GetParamIdx` Method” on page 3-41 for a description of how to manually perform the equivalent of using tagged parameters.

---

- 1** If you are not already in the code editor window, double-click the form or, from the **View** menu, select **Code**.
- 2** From the object list box, select the name of an object in the active form. (The *active* form is the form that currently has the focus.) For this example, select the `HScroll11` object.

The cursor jumps to the `HScroll11` object template of the code editor window.

- 3** In the procedure list box, select the name of an event for the selected object. Here, select the `Scroll` procedure.
- 4** Declare the `slideVal` variable as a double. The `slideVal` variable will contain the value of the scrollbar.

```
Dim slideVal(0) As Double
```

- 5** Assign to the `slideVal` variable the result of `Cdbl`. The `Cdbl` function reads the value of an object property. In this example, the object `HScroll11` has the property `slideVal(0)`. `Cdbl` reads the value of `HScroll11.Value` and returns that value to `slideVal`.

```
slideVal(0) = Cdbl(HScroll11.Value)
```

- 6** Set the value of `water_level` to the scroll bar value `slideVal`, which is from `HScrollBar`. The COM object `target_obj` has the method `SetParam`, which has the syntax `SetParam(parIdx, newparVal)`. The `SetParam` method references `parIdx` from the model-specific COM object (type `xpc_tank1pt`). To set the value of `water_level` to the scroll bar value `slideVal`, select `SetParam` and continue typing. A list of the parameters you tagged in



the Simulink model then pops up, and you can select the parameter `water_level` and continue typing.

The call to `SetParam` should look like the following:

```
stat = target_obj.SetParam(parameters_obj.water_level,
    slideVal)
```

When you are done, the contents of your code editor window should look similar to the code below:

```
Private Sub HScroll1_Scroll()
    Dim slideVal(0) As Double

    slideVal(0) = CDb1(HScroll1.Value)
    stat = target_obj.SetParam(parameters_obj.water_level,
    slideVal)
End Sub
```

## Creating Event Procedures to Display Signal Values at the Host

You can provide controls to view signal values at the host. To do this, use a combination of the timer and label controls. The following code uses the Visual Basic timer control to display the `water_level` signal on the label control.

---

**Note** This section assumes that you have tagged signals and created your own model-specific COM library. Refer to “Getting Signal IDs with the `GetSignalIdx` Method” on page 3-43 for a description of how to manually perform the equivalent of using tagged signals.

---

Before you start, check that the `Timer1.Interval` property is greater than 0.

- 1 From the object list box, select the `Timer1` object.
- 2 Assign to the `Label1.Caption` object the value of the `water_level` signal. The COM object `target_obj` has the method `GetSignal(sigNum)`. Reference the `sigNum` parameter by passing it `signals_obj.water_level`. The `CStr` function converts the returned value to a string so that it can be displayed on the `Label1` object.

When you are done, the contents of your code editor window should look similar to the code below:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()  
    Label1.Caption =  
    CStr(target_obj.GetSignal(signals_obj.water_level))  
End Sub
```

---

**Note** Although you add both a timer and label object to the Visual Basic application, only the label appears on the GUI itself when the Visual Basic application is run. The timer is not visible.

---

### Creating Unload and Termination Procedures

You should write Form Unload and Termination procedures to ensure that users are able to stop and unload the application appropriately, and to close the communication between the host PC and target PC.

---

**Note** Provide Form Unload and Termination procedures to ensure that the communication channel between the host PC and target PC properly closes between each run of the GUI application.

---

The Terminate procedure controls the behavior of the Visual Basic **Run** menu **End** option. The Unload procedure controls the behavior of the Visual Basic **Close** button.

- 1** From the object list box, select the Form object.
- 2** From the procedure list box, select Terminate.
- 3** You are going to close the connection with the target PC, so type `protocol_obj` and select the Close method for that object.

```
protocol_obj.Close
```

- 4** From the procedure list box, select Unload.

## 5 Repeat step

When you are done, the contents of your code editor window should look similar to the code below:

```

Private Sub Form_Terminate()
    protocol_obj.Close
End Sub
Private Sub Form_Unload(Cancel As Integer)
    protocol_obj.Close
End Sub

```

## Referencing Parameters and Signals Without Using Tags

The sample code in “Creating Event Procedures to Vary Input Values” on page 3-37 and “Creating Event Procedures to Display Signal Values at the Host” on page 3-39 illustrates how to reference parameters that you tagged before building the Simulink model. This section describes how to reference these same parameters and signals from the COM API application code if you did not opt to tag signals and parameters.

### Getting Parameter IDs with the GetParamIdx Method

When working with parameters in the context of varying input values, you use the SetParam and GetParamIdx methods. The SetParam method has the syntax

```

SetParam(ByVal parIdx As Integer, ByRef newparVal As
System.Array) As Long

```

where **parIdx** is the identifier that corresponds to the parameter you want to set. To obtain the parameter ID, **parIdx**, for SetParam, you need to call the GetParamIdx method. This method has the syntax

```

GetParamIdx(ByVal blockName As String, ByVal paramName As
String) As Long

```

The following procedure describes how to obtain the appropriate GetParamIdx block name and parameter name for the Visual Basic HScrollBar object. You need to reference the block name and parameter from the model\_namept.m file.

- 1** Open a DOS window.
- 2** Change the directory to the directory that contains your prebuilt model.
- 3** Open the file `model_namept.m`. For example, you can use the notepad text editor.

```
notepad xpc_tank1pt.m
```

The editor opens for that file. If you are not in the directory in which the `xpc_tank1pt.m` file resides, be sure to type the full path for `xpc_tank1pt.m`.

- 4** Search for and copy the string for the block of the parameter you want to reference. For the `xpc_tank1` example, search for the `SetPoint` block if you want to reference the water level. For example,

```
SetPoint
```

- 5** Return to the code editor window for your project.
- 6** In the line that contains the call to `GetParamIdx`, enter the path for the `blockName` variable.
- 7** Return to the editor window for `model_namept.m`.
- 8** Search for and copy the string for the name of the parameter you are interested in. For example,

```
Value
```

If you do not know the name of the block parameter you are interested in, refer to “Model and Block Parameters” of the Simulink Reference documentation.

- 9** Return to the code editor window for your project.
- 10** In the line that contains the call to `GetParamIdx`, enter the path for the `paramName` variable. For example,

```
stat = target_obj.SetParam(target_obj.GetParamIdx  
("SetPoint", "Value"), slideVal)
```

When you are done, the contents of your code editor window should look similar to the code below:

```
Private Sub HScroll11_Scroll()
    Dim slideVal(0) As Double

    slideVal(0) = CDb1(HScroll11.Value)
    stat =
target_obj.SetParam(target_obj.GetParamIdx
("SetPoint", "Value"), slideVal)

End Sub
```

Note, if you want to retrieve the full block path and parameter name of a block, use the `GetParamName` method. The `GetParamName` method returns a variant data type object with two elements. The first element contains the full block path, the second element contains the parameter name. The following example illustrates how to use the `GetParamName` method to get the block path and parameter name:

```
Dim Pname As Variant
Pname=xpc_tank1.GetParamName(GetParamIdx(Idx))
BlockPathString=CStr(Pname(0))
ParameterNameString=CStr(Pname(1))
```

In this example,

- `Idx` is the index to a parameter.
- `BlockPathString` contains the full block path string.
- `ParameterNameString` contains the parameter name string.

### Getting Signal IDs with the `GetSignalIdx` Method

When working with signals in the context of displaying signal values, you use the `GetSignal` and `GetSignalIdx` methods. The `GetSignal` method has the syntax

```
GetSignal(sigNum As Long) As Double
```

where `sigNum` is the identifier that corresponds to the signal you want to set.

To obtain the signal ID `sigNum` for `GetSignal`, you call the `GetSignalIdx` method. This method has the syntax

```
GetSignalIdx(sigName As String) As Long
```

The following procedure describes how to obtain the appropriate `GetSignalIdx` block name for the Visual Basic timer object. You need to reference the block name and signal from the `model_namebio.m` file.

- 1 Open a DOS window.
- 2 Change the directory to the directory that contains your prebuilt model.
- 3 Open the file `model_namebio.m`. For example,

```
notepad xpc_tank1bio.m
```

The editor opens for that file. If you are not in the directory in which the `xpc_tank1bio.m` file resides, be sure to type the full path for `xpc_tank1bio.m`.

- 4 Search for and copy the string for the block of the signal you want to reference. For the `xpc_tank1` example, search for the `TankLevel` block to reference the tank level. For example,


```
TankLevel
```

- 5 Return to the code editor window for your project.
- 6 In the line that contains the call to `GetSignalIdx`, enter the path for the `SigName` variable.

When you are done, the contents of your code editor window should look similar to the code below:

```
Private Sub Timer1_Timer()  
    Label1.Caption =  
    CStr(target_obj.GetSignal(target_obj.GetSignalIdx("TankLevel"  
    )))  
End Sub
```


## Testing the Visual Basic® Application

While creating your Visual Basic application, you might want to see how the application is progressing. Visual Basic allows you to run your application while still in the Visual Basic project. From the Visual Basic task bar, you can click the **Run** button . Alternatively, you can follow the procedure:

- 1 If you have the MATLAB interface and a target object connected, close the port. For example, at the MATLAB command line, type

```
tg.close
```

- 2 From within the project, go to the **Run** menu.
- 3 Select **Start** or **Start with Full Compile**. The **Start** option starts your application immediately. The **Start with Full Compile** option starts the application after compilation.

The form you are working on pops up. Test your application. Ensure that only one version of the application is running at any given time. To stop the application from within Visual Basic, you can click the **End** button  from the task bar. Alternatively, you can go to the **Run** menu and select **End**.

---

**Note** If your Visual Basic application opens a communication channel between the host PC and the target PC for the target application, be sure to close that open channel between test runs of the Visual Basic application. Not doing so can cause subsequent runs of the Visual Basic application to fail. “Creating Unload and Termination Procedures” on page 3-40 describes how to write a procedure to disconnect from the target PC. If you want to return control to the MATLAB interface, be sure to close the Visual Basic project first.

---

## Building the Visual Basic® Application

After you finish designing, programming, and testing your Visual Basic GUI application, build your application. You can later distribute the GUI application to users, who can then use it to work with target applications.

- 1 From within the project, go to the **File** menu.

- 2** Select **Make** `project_name_COM.exe`, where `project_name` is the name of the Visual Basic project you have been working on.
- 3** At the pop-up box, select the directory in which you want to save the executable. Optionally, you can also rename the executable.

The compiler generates the `project_name_COM.exe` file in the specified directory.

## Deploying the API Application

This section assumes that you have built your xPC Target application and your Visual Basic xPC Target COM GUI application. If you have not yet done so, refer to “Creating the Target Application and Model-Specific COM Library” on page 3-14 and “Building the Visual Basic® Application” on page 3-45, respectively.

When distributing the Visual Basic model application to users, provide the following files:

- `project_name_COM.exe`, the executable for the Visual Basic application
- `model_name.dlm`

Provide `model_name.dlm` if you expect the user to download the target application to the target PC. Ensure that you have enabled an application load event on the Visual Basic interface (refer to “Creating the Load Procedure” on page 3-33).

If you expect that the target application is already loaded on the target PC when the user runs the Visual Basic GUI application, you might not want him or her to be able to load the target application to the target PC.

- `model_nameCOMiface.dll`, if you tag the signals and parameters in the model
- `xpcapiCOM.dll`, the xPC Target COM API dynamic link library
- `xpcapi.dll`, the xPC Target API dynamic link library

Have the user ensure that all the files are located in the same directory before he or she executes the Visual Basic application.



You must also ensure that the user knows how to register the application-dependent dynamic link libraries (refer to “Registering Dependent Dynamic Link Libraries” on page 3-47).

To run the application and download an xPC Target application, users need to have `project_name_COM.exe` and `model_name.dlm`, if provided, in the same directory.

### Registering Dependent Dynamic Link Libraries

This procedure uses `xpc_tank1` as an example.

- 1 Open a DOS window.
- 2 Change the directory to the directory containing the API application files.
- 3 From the directory in which `xpcapiCOM.dll` resides, register the xPC Target COM API DLL by typing

```
regsvr32 xpcapiCOM.dll
```

DOS displays the message

```
DllRegisterServer in xpcapiCOM.dll succeeded
```

### Creating a New Visual Basic® Project Using Microsoft® Visual Studio® 7.1 or 8.0

The procedures for the preceding topics apply to Microsoft Visual Studio 6.0 (“Creating a New Microsoft® Visual Basic® Project” on page 3-21). The procedures to use Microsoft Visual Studio 7.1 (.NET 2003) and 8.0 are similar, with the following exceptions. Note that references to Microsoft Visual Studio 7.1 or .NET 2003 also apply to Microsoft Visual Studio 8.0.

- You can open a Microsoft Visual Studio 6.0 project under Microsoft Visual Studio .NET 2003. Microsoft Visual Studio .NET 2003 automatically converts the project.
- If you first create a new Visual Basic project, select **Windows Application** as the template.
- When referencing the xPC Target COM API and model-specific COM libraries, do the following

- a** From the **Project** menu, click **Add Reference**.

The Add Reference dialog box opens.

- b** Select the **COM** tab.

- c** Scroll down the **Component Name** list to the bottom and select the **xPC Target API COM Type Library** item.

- d** Click **Select**.

**xPC Target API COM Type Library** appears in the **Selected Components** pane.

- e** Click **OK**.

- When creating a reference to the xPC Target interface objects, include the COM library. The following illustrates example code on how to reference these objects in Microsoft Visual Studio .NET 2003 and Microsoft Visual Studio 6.0:

Microsoft Visual Studio .NET 2003

```
Public protocol_obj As XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol
Public target_obj As XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
Public scope_obj As XPCAPICOMLib.xPCScopes
```

Microsoft Visual Studio 6.0

```
Public protocol_obj As xPCProtocol
Public target_obj As xPCTarget
Public scope_obj As xPCScopes
```

- When creating an instance of the xPC Target interface objects, include the COM library. The following illustrates example code on how to create an instance of these objects in Microsoft Visual Studio .NET 2003 and Microsoft Visual Studio 6.0:

Microsoft Visual Studio .NET 2003

```
protocol_obj = New XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol
target_obj = New XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
scope_obj = New XPCAPICOMLib.xPCScopes
```

Microsoft Visual Studio 6.0:

```
Set protocol_obj = New xPCProtocol
Set target_obj = New xPCTarget
Set scope_obj = New xPCScopes
```

- Microsoft Visual Studio .NET 2003 builds applications into the **bin** directory of your project area. You cannot choose another location to place your executable.
- When distributing the Visual Basic model application to users, provide the following files in addition to those listed in “Deploying the API Application” on page 3-46:
  - Interop.model\_nameACOMIFACELib.dll
  - Interop.XPCAPICOMLib.dll



# xPC Target™ COM API Demos and Scripts

---

Microsoft® Visual Basic® 7.1 (.NET  
2003) Demo (p. 4-2)

The Microsoft® Visual Basic® .NET  
2003 demo illustrates how to create  
a generic custom GUI that connects  
to a target PC with any downloaded  
target application.

Microsoft® Visual Basic® 6.0 Demo  
(p. 4-5)

The Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0  
sf\_car\_xpc demo illustrates how to  
create a custom GUI that connects  
to a target PC that has a specific  
(sf\_car\_xpc) downloaded target  
application.

Tcl/Tk Scripts (p. 4-8)

The Tcl/Tk demos are scripts that  
illustrate how to directly access  
COM API functions through a  
command-line interpreter like  
Tcl/Tk.

## Microsoft® Visual Basic® 7.1 (.NET 2003) Demo

In this section...
“Introduction” on page 4-2
“Before Starting” on page 4-3
“Accessing the Demo Project Solution” on page 4-3
“Rebuilding the Demo Project Solution” on page 4-4
“Using the Demo Executable” on page 4-4

### Introduction

To help you better understand and quickly begin to use COM API functions to create custom GUI applications, the xPC Target™ environment provides a number of API demos and scripts in the `C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api` directory. This topic briefly describes those demos and scripts.

The Microsoft® Visual Basic® .NET 2003 demo illustrates how to create a custom GUI that connects to a target PC with a downloaded target application. The solution file for this demo is located in

`C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api\VBNET\SigsAndParamsDemo`

- `bin` — Contains the executable for the demo project and the `xpcapi.dll` file
- `Demo.sln` — Contains a solution file for the Demo project

The `Demo.sln` file contains all the Visual Basic® .NET 2003 files to run the windows form application. This demo is a functional application that you can use as a template to create your own custom GUIs.

The COM API example from “Example Visual Basic® GUI Using COM Objects” on page 3-4 is a simple GUI that illustrates some basic concepts for creating a GUI with the COM API. The Demo solution is a more advanced example that illustrates how to create a GUI similar to the xPC Target Explorer. The Demo solution is fully commented.

This demo illustrates how you can use the COM API to create a GUI that

- Connects to the target PC via an RS-232 or TCP/IP connection
- Starts and stops the target application loaded on the target PC
- Retrieves and lists all the signals in the target application
- Displays the value of a selected signal
- Retrieves and lists all the parameters in the target application
- Change the values of the parameters

## Before Starting

To use the Demo solution, you need

- A target PC running a current xPC Target kernel
- A host PC running the MATLAB® software interface, connected to the target PC via RS-232 or TCP/IP
- A target application loaded on the target PC

The xPC Target product ships with an executable version of the demo. If you want to rebuild the Demo solution, or if you want to write your own custom GUIs like this one, you need Microsoft Visual Basic .NET 2003 installed on the host PC.

---

**Note** The xPC Target software allows you to create applications, such as GUIs, to interact with a target PC with COM API functions. Chapter 3, “xPC Target™ COM API” describes this in detail. To deploy a GUI application to other host PC systems that do not have your licensed copy of the xPC Target product, you need the xPC Target Embedded Option™. If you do not have the xPC Target Embedded Option and would like to deploy your GUI application, contact your MathWorks™ representative.

---

## Accessing the Demo Project Solution

To access the Demo solution,

- 1 Copy the contents of the VBNET directory to a writable directory of your choice.
- 2 Change directory to the one that contains your copy of the Demo solution.
- 3 Double-click `demo.sln`.

The Microsoft® Development Environment for Visual Basic application starts.

- 4 In the **Solution Explorer** pane, double-click `Form1.vb` to display the Demo solution form.

The form is displayed. You can inspect the layout of the demo.

- 5 To inspect the form code, select the **View** menu Code option.

The Visual Basic code for the form is displayed.

### Rebuilding the Demo Project Solution

To rebuild the Demo solution,

- 1 Double-click `demo.sln`.

The Microsoft Development Environment for Visual Basic application starts.

- 2 Select the **Build** menu Build Solution option.

### Using the Demo Executable

To use the Demo solution executable,

- 1 Change directory to the one that contains your copy of the Demo solution.
- 2 Change directory to the bin directory.
- 3 Double-click `Demo1.exe`.

The GUI is displayed.



## Microsoft® Visual Basic® 6.0 Demo

In this section...
“Introduction” on page 4-5
“Before Starting” on page 4-6
“Accessing the sf_car_xpc Project” on page 4-6
“Rebuilding the sf_car_xpc Project” on page 4-7
“Using the sf_car_xpc Executable” on page 4-7

### Introduction

The Microsoft® Visual Basic® 6.0 sf\_car\_xpc demo illustrates how to create a custom GUI that connects to a target PC. The files for this demo are located in

`C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api\VisualBasicModels\sf_car_xpc`

This application interfaces with the xPC Target™ application sf\_car\_xpc.dlm, built from the Simulink® model sf\_car\_xpc.mdl. This model simulates an automatic transmission control system composed of modules that represent the engine, transmission, and vehicle, with an additional logic block to control the transmission ratio. User inputs to the model are in the form of throttle (%) and brake torque (ft-lb).

This demo illustrates how you can use the COM API to create a GUI that

- Connects to the target PC via an RS-232 or TCP/IP connection
- Loads the sf\_car\_xpc.dlm target application to the target PC
- Starts and starts the target application engine
- Edits the stop time of the target application
- Edits the sample time of the target application
- Displays the speed, RPM, and gear of the target application engine

---

**Note** For detailed information on the project, see the `readme.txt` file located in `C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api\VisualBasic\Models\sf_car_xpc`.

---

### Before Starting

To use the `sf_car_xpc` project, you need

- A target PC running a current xPC Target kernel
- A host PC running the MATLAB® interface, connected to the target PC via RS-232 or TCP/IP

The xPC Target product ships with an executable version of the `sf_car_xpc` project. If you want to rebuild the `sf_car_xpc` project, you need Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0 Professional installed on the host PC. If you want to view or edit the model, you need to have the Stateflow® product installed on the host PC.

---

**Note** The xPC Target environment allows you to create applications, such as GUIs, to interact with a target PC with COM API functions. Chapter 3, “xPC Target™ COM API” describes this in detail. To deploy a GUI application to other host PC systems that do not have your licensed copy of the xPC Target product, you need the xPC Target Embedded Option™ license. If you do not have the xPC Target Embedded Option license and would like to deploy your GUI application, contact your MATLAB representative.

---

### Accessing the `sf_car_xpc` Project

To access the `sf_car_xpc` project,

- 1 Copy the contents of the `VisualBasic` directory to a writable directory of your choice.
- 2 Change directory to the one that contains your copy of the `sf_car_xpc` project.

- 3 Double-click the Visual Basic® project. For example, double-click `sf_car_xpc_COM.vbp`.

The Microsoft Visual Basic application starts.

- 4 In the right **Project** pane, expand the Forms folder.

- 5 Double-click the form you want to look at.

The form is displayed. You can inspect the layout of it.

- 6 To inspect the form code, select the **View** menu Code option.

The Visual Basic code for the form is displayed.

## Rebuilding the `sf_car_xpc` Project

To rebuild the `sf_car_xpc` project,

- 1 Double-click the Visual Basic project. For example, double-click `sf_car_xpc_COM.vbp`.

The Microsoft Visual Basic application starts.

- 2 Select the **File** menu Make `sf_car_xpc.exe`.

## Using the `sf_car_xpc` Executable

To use the `sf_car_xpc` project executable,

- 1 Change directory to the one that contains your copy of the `sf_car_xpc` project.
- 2 Change directory to the `bin` directory.
- 3 Double-click `sf_car_xpc.exe`.

The GUI is displayed.

## Tcl/Tk Scripts

In this section...
“Introduction” on page 4-8
“Required Tcl/Tk Software” on page 4-9
“Using the Demo Scripts” on page 4-9

### Introduction

The Tcl/Tk demos are scripts that illustrate how to directly access xPC Target™ COM API functions through a command-line interpreter like Tcl/Tk. With Tcl/Tk

- You can write simple command-line scripts that communicate with a target PC and the target application downloaded on that target PC.
- You can write simple GUIs that you can use to interact with a target application downloaded on a target PC.

The files for this scripts are located in

`C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api\tcltk`

- `xpcapi.dll` — The xPC Target API DLL file. This file must be in the current (pwd) directory. Alternatively, you can copy the file `xpcapi.dll` into the Windows® system directory.
- `xpcbase.tcl` — Contains utility procedures used by the other scripts in the series
- `xpclists.tcl` — Generates a list of signals or parameters for the target application currently loaded on the target PC
- `xpload.tcl` — Loads the specified target application to the connected target PC
- `xpcoutputlog.tcl` — Reads log data from the target PC and plots the data on the host PC
- `xpcstart.tcl` — Starts the target application loaded on the target PC

- `xpcstop.tcl` — Stops the target application loaded on the target PC
- `xpctargetping.tcl` — Tests the communication between the host and target PCs
- `xpctargetscope.tcl` — Creates a simple GUI that enables you to add and control a scope of type target
- `xpctune.tcl` — Creates a simple GUI slider that enables you to manipulate a parameter value for the target PC application

## Required Tcl/Tk Software

To use these Tcl/Tk scripts, or to write your own Tcl/Tk scripts, you need

- An installation of a Tcl/Tk distribution on the host PC.
- An add-on package to the Tcl/Tk interpreter so that the scripts can access the COM API objects. The `tcom` package is recommended. This package was used to create the demo scripts in the `C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\tcltk` directory.
- The `math::statistics` package. This package is required for the `xpcoutputlog.tcl` file.

---

**Note** There are Tcl/Tk distributions that include required and useful packages for use with the xPC Target software. For example, the Tcl/Tk distribution at <http://www.activestate.com> contains these packages.

---

## Using the Demo Scripts

The top of each Tcl/Tk script file contains directions on how to use each Tcl/Tk scripts. In general:

- 1** Copy the contents of the `tcltk` directory to a writable directory of your choice.
- 2** Change directory to the one that contains your copy of the Tcl/Tk script files.
- 3** Start your Tcl/Tk interpreter.
- 4** Load the Tcl/Tk script with the `source` command. For example,

```
source xpctargetping.tcl
```

**5** Run the loaded script. For example,

```
xpctargetping 192.168.0.10 22222
```

The selected script executes. In this example, `xpctargetping.tcl` tests the communication between the host and target PC and returns a success or failure message.

# API Function and Method Reference

---

C API Functions (p. 5-2)

Program with C API functions

COM API Methods (p. 5-10)

Program with COM API methods

## **C API Functions**

Logging, Scope, and File System Structures (p. 5-2)	Data structures for data logging and scopes
Communications Functions (p. 5-3)	Communicate between host and target PCs
Target Application Functions (p. 5-3)	Manipulate target applications
Data Logging Functions (p. 5-4)	Log data
Scope Functions (p. 5-5)	Manipulate scopes
File System Functions (p. 5-7)	Manipulate file systems
Target Scope Functions (p. 5-8)	Manipulate scopes of type target
Monitoring and Tuning Functions (p. 5-8)	Monitor and tune parameters and signals
Miscellaneous Functions (p. 5-9)	Manipulate miscellaneous xPC Target components

### **Logging, Scope, and File System Structures**

dirStruct	Type definition for file system directory information structure
diskinfo	Type definition for file system disk information structure
lgmode	Type definition for logging options structure
scopedata	Type definition for scope data structure



## Communications Functions

xPCCloseConnection	Close RS-232 or TCP/IP communication connection
xPCClosePort	Close RS-232 or TCP/IP communication connection
xPCDeRegisterTarget	Delete target communication properties from xPC Target™ API library
xPCGetLoadTimeOut	Return timeout value for communication between host PC and target PC
xPCOpenConnection	Open connection to target PC
xPCOpenSerialPort	Open RS-232 connection to xPC Target system
xPCOpenTcpIpPort	Open TCP/IP connection to xPC Target system
xPCReboot	Reboot target PC
xPCRegisterTarget	Register target with xPC Target API library
xPCReOpenPort	Reopen communication channel
xPCSetLoadTimeOut	Change initialization timeout value between host PC and target PC
xPCTargetPing	Ping target PC

## Target Application Functions

xPCAverageTET	Return average task execution time
xPCGetAPIVersion	Get version number of xPC Target API
xPCGetAppName	Return target application name

xPCGetExecTime	Return target application execution time
xPCGetSampleTime	Return target application sample time
xPCGetStopTime	Return stop time
xPCGetTargetVersion	Get xPC Target kernel version
xPCIsAppRunning	Return target application running status
xPCIsOverloaded	Return target PC overload status
xPCLoadApp	Load target application onto target PC
xPCLoadParamSet	Restore parameter values
xPCMaximumTET	Copy maximum task execution time to array
xPCMinimumTET	Copy minimum task execution time to array
xPCSaveParamSet	Save parameter values of target application
xPCSetSampleTime	Change target application sample time
xPCSetStopTime	Change target application stop time
xPCStartApp	Start target application
xPCStopApp	Stop target application
xPCUnloadApp	Unload target application

## **Data Logging Functions**

xPCGetLogMode	Return logging mode and increment value for target application
xPCGetNumOutputs	Return number of outputs

xPCGetNumStates	Return number of states
xPCGetOutputLog	Copy output log data to array
xPCGetStateLog	Copy state log values to array
xPCGetTETLog	Copy TET log to array
xPCGetTimeLog	Copy time log to array
xPCMaxLogSamples	Return maximum number of samples that can be in log buffer
xPCNumLogSamples	Return number of samples in log buffer
xPCNumLogWraps	Return number of times log buffer wraps
xPCSetLogMode	Set logging mode and increment value of scope

## Scope Functions

xPCAddScope	Create new scope
xPCGetScope	Get and copy scope data to structure
xPCGetScopes	Get and copy list of scope numbers
xPCIsScFinished	Return data acquisition status for scope
xPCRemScope	Remove scope
xPCScAddSignal	Add signal to scope
xPCScGetData	Copy scope data to array
xPCScGetDecimation	Return decimation of scope
xPCScGetNumPrePostSamples	Get number of pre- or posttriggering samples before triggering scope
xPCScGetNumSamples	Get number of samples in one data acquisition cycle
xPCScGetSignals	Copy list of signals to array

xPCScGetStartTime	Get start time for last data acquisition cycle
xPCScGetState	Get state of scope
xPCScGetTriggerLevel	Get trigger level for scope
xPCScGetTriggerMode	Get trigger mode for scope
xPCScGetTriggerScope	Get trigger scope
xPCScGetTriggerScopeSample	Get sample number for triggering scope
xPCScGetTriggerSignal	Get trigger signal for scope
xPCScGetTriggerSlope	Get trigger slope for scope
xPCScGetType	Get type of scope
xPCScRemSignal	Remove signal from scope
xPCScSetDecimation	Set decimation of scope
xPCScSetNumPrePostSamples	Set number of pre- or posttriggering samples before triggering scope
xPCScSetNumSamples	Set number of samples in one data acquisition cycle
xPCScSetTriggerLevel	Set trigger level for scope
xPCScSetTriggerMode	Set trigger mode of scope
xPCScSetTriggerScope	Select scope to trigger another scope
xPCScSetTriggerScopeSample	Set sample number for triggering scope
xPCScSetTriggerSignal	Select signal to trigger scope
xPCScSetTriggerSlope	Set slope of signal that triggers scope
xPCScSoftwareTrigger	Set software trigger of scope
xPCScStart	Start data acquisition for scope
xPCScStop	Stop data acquisition for scope
xPCSetScope	Set properties of scope

## File System Functions

xPCFSCD	Change current directory on target PC to specified path
xPCFSCloseFile	Close file on target PC
xPCFSDir	Get contents of specified directory on target PC
xPCFSDirItems	Get contents of specified directory on target PC
xPCFSDirSize	Return size of specified directory on target PC
xPCFSDirStructSize	Get number of items in directory
xPCFSDiskInfo	Information about target PC file system
xPCFSGetError	Get text description for error number on target PC file system
xPCFSGetFileSize	Return size of file on target PC
xPCFSGetPWD	Get current directory of target PC
xPCFSOpenFile	Open file on target PC
xPCFSReadFile	Read open file on target PC
xPCFSRemoveFile	Remove file from target PC
xPCFSRMDIR	Remove directory from target PC
xPCFSScGetFilename	Get name of file for scope
xPCFSScGetWriteMode	Get write mode of file for scope
xPCFSScGetWriteSize	Get block write size of data chunks
xPCFSScSetFilename	Specify name for file to contain signal data
xPCFSScSetWriteMode	Specify when file allocation table entry is updated

xPCFSScSetWriteSize	Specify that memory buffer collect data in multiples of write size
xPCFSWriteFile	Write to file on target PC

## Target Scope Functions

xPCTgScGetGrid	Get status of grid line for particular scope
xPCTgScGetMode	Get scope mode for displaying signals
xPCTgScGetViewMode	Get view mode for target PC display
xPCTgScGetYLimits	Copy <i>y</i> -axis limits for scope to array
xPCTgScSetGrid	Set grid mode for scope
xPCTgScSetMode	Set display mode for scope
xPCTgScSetViewMode	Set view mode for scope
xPCTgScSetYLimits	Set <i>y</i> -axis limits for scope

## Monitoring and Tuning Functions

xPCGetNumParams	Return number of tunable parameters
xPCGetNumSignals	Return number of signals
xPCGetParam	Get parameter value and copy it to array
xPCGetParamDims	Get row and column dimensions of parameter
xPCGetParamIdx	Return parameter index
xPCGetParamName	Get name of parameter
xPCGetSigIdxfromLabel	Return array of signal indices
xPCGetSigLabelWidth	Return number of elements in signal
xPCGetSignal	Return value of signal

---

xPCGetSignalIdx	Return index for signal
xPCGetSignalName	Copy name of signal to character array
xPCGetSignals	Return vector of signal values
xPCGetSignalWidth	Return width of signal
xPCSetParam	Change value of parameter

## Miscellaneous Functions

xPCErrorMsg	Return text description for error message
xPCFreeAPI	Unload xPC Target DLL
xPCGetEcho	Return display mode for target message window
xPCGetLastError	Return constant of last error
xPCInitAPI	Initialize xPC Target DLL
xPCSetEcho	Turn message display on or off
xPCSetLastError	Set last error to specific string constant

## COM API Methods

Communication Objects (xPCProtocol) (p. 5-10)	Work with COM API communication objects
Scope Objects (xPCScopes) (p. 5-11)	Work with COM API scope objects
Target Objects (xPCTarget) (p. 5-13)	Work with COM API Target objects
File System Objects (xPCFileSystem) (p. 5-15)	Work with COM API file system objects

### Communication Objects (xPCProtocol)

xPCProtocol.Close	Close RS-232 or TCP/IP communication connection
xPCProtocol.GetLoadTimeOut	Return current timeout value for target application initialization
xPCProtocol.GetxPCErrorMsg	Return error string
xPCProtocol.Init	Initialize xPC Target™ API DLL
xPCProtocol.isxPCError	Return error status
xPCProtocol.Port	Contain communication channel index
xPCProtocol.Reboot	Reboot target PC
xPCProtocol.RS232Connect	Open RS-232 connection to target PC
xPCProtocol.SetLoadTimeOut	Change initialization timeout value
xPCProtocol.TargetPing	Ping target PC
xPCProtocol.TcpIpConnect	Open TCP/IP connection to target PC
xPCProtocol.Term	Unload xPC Target API DLL from memory



## Scope Objects (xPCScopes)

xPCScopes.AddFileScope	Create new scope of type file
xPCScopes.AddHostScope	Create new scope of type host
xPCScopes.AddTargetScope	Create new scope of type target
xPCScopes.GetScopes	Get and copy list of scope numbers
xPCScopes.GetxPCError	Get error string
xPCScopes.Init	Initialize scope object to communicate with target PC
xPCScopes.IsScopeFinished	Get data acquisition status for scope
xPCScopes.isxPCError	Get error status
xPCScopes.RemScope	Remove scope
xPCScopes.ScopeAddSignal	Add signal to scope
xPCScopes.ScopeGetData	Copy scope data to array
xPCScopes.ScopeGetDecimation	Get decimation of scope
xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumPrePostSamples	Get number of pre- or posttriggering samples before triggering scope
xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumSamples	Get number of samples in one data acquisition cycle
xPCScopes.ScopeGetSignals	Get list of signals
xPCScopes.ScopeGetStartTime	Get last data acquisition cycle start time
xPCScopes.ScopeGetState	Get state of scope
xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerLevel	Get trigger level for scope
xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerMode	Get trigger mode for scope
xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerModeStr	Get trigger mode as string
xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSample	Get sample number for triggering scope
xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSignal	Get trigger signal for scope

<code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlope</code>	Get trigger slope for scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlope-Str</code>	Get trigger slope as string
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetType</code>	Get type of scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeRemSignal</code>	Remove signal from scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetDecimation</code>	Set decimation of scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumPrePost-Samples</code>	Set number of pre- or posttriggering samples before triggering scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumSamples</code>	Set number of samples in one data acquisition cycle
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerLevel</code>	Set trigger level for scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerMode</code>	Set trigger mode of scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSample</code>	Set sample number for triggering scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSignal</code>	Select signal to trigger scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSlope</code>	Set slope of signal that triggers scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeSoftwareTrigger</code>	Set software trigger of scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeStart</code>	Start data acquisition for scope
<code>xPCScopes.ScopeStop</code>	Stop data acquisition for scope
<code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetGrid</code>	Get status of grid line for particular scope
<code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetMode</code>	Get scope mode for displaying signals
<code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetModeStr</code>	Get scope mode string for displaying signals
<code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetViewMode</code>	Get view mode for target PC display
<code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetYLimits</code>	Get <i>y</i> -axis limits for scope
<code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetGrid</code>	Set grid mode for scope
<code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetMode</code>	Set display mode for scope

xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetViewMode Set view mode for scope  
 xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetYLimits Set y-axis limits for scope

## Target Objects (xPCTarget)

xPCTarget.AverageTET	Get average task execution time
xPCTarget.GetAppName	Get target application name
xPCTarget.GetExecTime	Get execution time for target application
xPCTarget.GetNumOutputs	Get number of outputs
xPCTarget.GetNumParams	Get number of tunable parameters
xPCTarget.GetNumSignals	Get number of signals
xPCTarget.GetNumStates	Get number of states
xPCTarget.GetOutputLog	Copy output log data to array
xPCTarget.GetParam	Get parameter values
xPCTarget.GetParamDims	Get row and column dimensions of parameter
xPCTarget.GetParamIdx	Get parameter index
xPCTarget.GetParamName	Get parameter name
xPCTarget.GetSampleTime	Get sample time
xPCTarget.GetSignal	Get signal value
xPCTarget.GetSignalidsfromLabel	Get signal IDs from signal label
xPCTarget.GetSignalIdx	Get signal index
xPCTarget.GetSignalLabel	Get signal label
xPCTarget.GetSignalName	Copy signal name to character array
xPCTarget.GetSignalWidth	Get width of signal
xPCTarget.GetStateLog	Get state log
xPCTarget.GetStopTime	Get stop time

xPCTarget.GetTETLog	Get TET log
xPCTarget.GetTimeLog	Get time log
xPCTarget.GetxPCError	Get error string
xPCTarget.Init	Initialize target object to communicate with target PC
xPCTarget.IsAppRunning	Return running status for target application
xPCTarget.IsOverloaded	Return overload status for target PC
xPCTarget.isxPCError	Return error status
xPCTarget.LoadApp	Load target application onto target PC
xPCTarget.MaximumTET	Copy maximum task execution time to array
xPCTarget.MaxLogSamples	Return maximum number of samples that can be in log buffer
xPCTarget.MinimumTET	Copy minimum task execution time to array
xPCTarget.NumLogSamples	Return number of samples in log buffer
xPCTarget.NumLogWraps	Return number of times log buffer wraps
xPCTarget.SetParam	Change parameter value
xPCTarget.SetSampleTime	Change sample time for target application
xPCTarget.SetStopTime	Change stop time of target application
xPCTarget.StartApp	Start target application
xPCTarget.StopApp	Stop target application
xPCTarget.UnLoadApp	Unload target application

## File System Objects (xPCFileSystem)

FSDir	Type definition for file system directory information structure
FSDiskInfo	Type definition for file system disk information structure
xPCFileSystem.CD	Change current directory on target PC to specified path
xPCFileSystem.CloseFile	Close file on target PC
xPCFileSystem.DirList	Return contents of target PC directory
xPCFileSystem.GetDiskInfo	Return disk information
xPCFileSystem.GetFileSize	Return size of file on target PC
xPCFileSystem.Init	Initialize file system object to communicate with target PC
xPCFileSystem.MKDIR	Create directory on target PC
xPCFileSystem.OpenFile	Open file on target PC
xPCFileSystem.PWD	Get current directory of target PC
xPCFileSystem.ReadFile	Read open file on target PC
xPCFileSystem.RemoveFile	Remove file from target PC
xPCFileSystem.RMDIR	Remove directory from target PC
xPCFileSystem.ScGetFileName	Get name of file for scope
xPCFileSystem.ScGetWriteMode	Get write mode of file for scope
xPCFileSystem.ScGetWriteSize	Get block write size of data chunks
xPCFileSystem.ScSetFileName	Specify file name to contain signal data
xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteMode	Specify when file allocation table entry is updated

<code>xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteSize</code>	Specify that memory buffer collect data in multiples of write size
<code>xPCFileSystem.WriteFile</code>	Write to file on target PC

# API Functions and Methods

---

# dirStruct

---

**Purpose** Type definition for file system directory information structure

**Prototype**

```
typedef struct {
    char      Name[8];
    char      Ext[3];
    char      Day;
    int  Month;
    int  Year;
    int  Hour;
    int  Min;
    int  isDir;
    unsigned long  Size;
} dirStruct;
```

<b>Arguments</b>	<i>Name</i>	This value contains the name of the file or directory.
	<i>Ext</i>	This value contains the file type of the element, if the element is a file ( <i>isDir</i> is 0). If the element is a directory ( <i>isDir</i> is 1), this field is empty.
	<i>Day</i>	This value contains the day the file or directory was last modified.
	<i>Month</i>	This value contains the month the file or directory was last modified.
	<i>Year</i>	This value contains the year the file or directory was last modified.
	<i>Hour</i>	This value contains the hour the file or directory was last modified.
	<i>Min</i>	This value contains the minute the file or directory was last modified.



<i>isDir</i>	This value indicates if the element is a file (0) or directory (1). If it is a directory, Bytes has a value of 0.
<i>Size</i>	This value contains the size of the file in bytes. If the element is a directory, this value is 0.

**Description** The `dirStruct` structure contains information for a directory in the file system.

**See Also** API function `xPCFSDirItems`

# diskinfo

---

**Purpose** Type definition for file system disk information structure

**Prototype**

```
typedef struct {
    char      Label[12];
    char      DriveLetter;
    char      Reserved[3];
    unsigned int  SerialNumber;
    unsigned int  FirstPhysicalSector;
    unsigned int  FATType;
    unsigned int  FATCount;
    unsigned int  MaxDirEntries;
    unsigned int  BytesPerSector;
    unsigned int  SectorsPerCluster;
    unsigned int  TotalClusters;
    unsigned int  BadClusters;
    unsigned int  FreeClusters;
    unsigned int  Files;
    unsigned int  FileChains;
    unsigned int  FreeChains;
    unsigned int  LargestFreeChain;
} diskinfo;
```

**Arguments**

<i>Label</i>	This value contains the zero-terminated string that contains the volume label. The string is empty if the volume has no label.
<i>DriveLetter</i>	This value contains the drive letter, in uppercase.
<i>Reserved</i>	Reserved.
<i>SerialNumber</i>	This value contains the volume serial number.
<i>FirstPhysicalSector</i>	This value contains the logical block addressing (LBA) address of the logical drive boot record. For 3.5-inch disks, this value is 0.

---

<i>FATType</i>	This value contains the type of file system found. It can contain 12 , 16 , or 32 for FAT-12, FAT-16, or FAT-32 volumes, respectively.
<i>FATCount</i>	This value contains the number of FAT partitions on the volume.
<i>MaxDirEntries</i>	This value contains the size of the root directory. For FAT-32 systems, this value is 0.
<i>BytesPerSector</i>	This value contains the sector size. This value is most likely to be 512.
<i>SectorsPerCluster</i>	This value contains, in sectors, the size of the smallest unit of storage that can be allocated to a file.
<i>TotalClusters</i>	This value contains the number of file storage clusters on the volume.
<i>BadClusters</i>	This value contains the number of clusters that have been marked as bad. These clusters are unavailable for file storage.
<i>FreeClusters</i>	This value contains the number of clusters that are currently available for storage.
<i>Files</i>	This value contains the number of files, including directories, on the volume. This number excludes the root directory and files that have an allocated file size of 0.
<i>FileChains</i>	This value contains the number of contiguous cluster chains. On a completely unfragmented volume, this value is identical to the value of Files.

# diskinfo

---

<i>FreeChains</i>	This value contains the number of contiguous cluster chains of free clusters. On a completely unfragmented volume, this value is 1.
<i>LargestFreeChain</i>	This value contains the maximum allocated file size, in number of clusters, for a newly allocated contiguous file. On a completely unfragmented volume, this value is identical to FreeClusters.

**Description** The diskinfo structure contains information for file system disks.

**See Also** API function `xPCFSDiskInfo`

**Purpose** Type definition for file system directory information structure

**Prototype**

```
typedef struct {  
    BSTR Name;  
    BSTR Date;  
    BSTR Time;  
    long Bytes;  
    long isdir;  
} FSDir;
```

**Arguments**

<i>Name</i>	This value contains the name of the file or directory.
<i>Date</i>	This value contains the date the file or directory was last modified.
<i>Time</i>	This value contains the time the file or directory was last modified.
<i>Bytes</i>	This value contains the size of the file in bytes. If the element is a directory, this value is 0.
<i>isdir</i>	This value indicates if the element is a file (0) or directory (1). If it is a directory, <i>Bytes</i> has a value of 0.

**Description** The FSDir structure contains information for a directory in the file system.

**See Also** API method `xPCFileSystem.DirList`

# FSDiskInfo

---

**Purpose** Type definition for file system disk information structure

**Prototpye**

```
typedef struct {
    BSTR Label;
    BSTR DriveLetter;
    BSTR Reserved;
    long SerialNumber;
    long FirstPhysicalSector;
    long FATType;
    long FATCount;
    long MaxDirEntries;
    long BytesPerSector;
    long SectorsPerCluster;
    long TotalClusters;
    long BadClusters;
    long FreeClusters;
    long Files;
    long FileChains;
    long FreeChains;
    long LargestFreeChain;
} FSDiskInfo;
```

**Arguments**

<i>Label</i>	This value contains the zero-terminated string that contains the volume label. The string is empty if the volume has no label.
<i>DriveLetter</i>	This value contains the drive letter, in uppercase.
<i>Reserved</i>	Reserved.
<i>SerialNumber</i>	This value contains the volume serial number.
<i>FirstPhysicalSector</i>	This value contains the logical block address (LBA) of the logical drive boot record. For 3.5-inch disks, this value is 0.

<i>FATType</i>	This value contains the type of file system found. It can contain 12 , 16 , or 32 for FAT-12, FAT-16, or FAT-32 volumes, respectively.
<i>FATCount</i>	This value contains the number of FAT partitions on the volume.
<i>MaxDirEntries</i>	This value contains the size of the root directory. For FAT-32 systems, this value is 0.
<i>BytesPerSector</i>	This value contains the sector size. This value is most likely to be 512.
<i>SectorsPerCluster</i>	This value contains, in sectors, the size of the smallest unit of storage that can be allocated to a file.
<i>TotalClusters</i>	This value contains the number of file storage clusters on the volume.
<i>BadClusters</i>	This value contains the number of clusters that have been marked as bad. These clusters are unavailable for file storage.
<i>FreeClusters</i>	This value contains the number of clusters that are currently available for storage.
<i>Files</i>	This value contains the number of files, including directories, on the volume. This number excludes the root directory and files that have an allocated file size of 0.
<i>FileChains</i>	This value contains the number of contiguous cluster chains. On a completely unfragmented volume, this value is identical to the value of <i>Files</i> .

# FSDiskInfo

---

<i>FreeChains</i>	This value contains the number of contiguous cluster chains of free clusters. On a completely unfragmented volume, this value is 1.
<i>LargestFreeChain</i>	This value contains the maximum allocated file size, in number of clusters, for a newly allocated contiguous file. On a completely unfragmented volume, this value is identical to <i>FreeClusters</i> .

**Description** The FSDiskInfo structure contains information for file system disks.

**See Also** API method `xPCFileSystem.GetDiskInfo`



---

<b>Purpose</b>	Type definition for logging options structure				
<b>Prototype</b>	<pre>typedef struct {     int    mode;     double incrementvalue; } lgmode;</pre>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>mode</i></td><td>This value indicates the type of logging you want. Specify LGMOD_TIME for time-equidistant logging. Specify LGMOD_VALUE for value-equidistant logging.</td></tr><tr><td><i>incrementvalue</i></td><td>If you set <i>mode</i> to LGMOD_VALUE for value-equidistant data, this option specifies the increment (difference in amplitude) value between logged data points. A data point is logged only when an output signal or a state changes by <i>incrementvalue</i>.  If you set <i>mode</i> to LGMOD_TIME, <i>incrementvalue</i> is ignored.</td></tr></table>	<i>mode</i>	This value indicates the type of logging you want. Specify LGMOD_TIME for time-equidistant logging. Specify LGMOD_VALUE for value-equidistant logging.	<i>incrementvalue</i>	If you set <i>mode</i> to LGMOD_VALUE for value-equidistant data, this option specifies the increment (difference in amplitude) value between logged data points. A data point is logged only when an output signal or a state changes by <i>incrementvalue</i> .  If you set <i>mode</i> to LGMOD_TIME, <i>incrementvalue</i> is ignored.
<i>mode</i>	This value indicates the type of logging you want. Specify LGMOD_TIME for time-equidistant logging. Specify LGMOD_VALUE for value-equidistant logging.				
<i>incrementvalue</i>	If you set <i>mode</i> to LGMOD_VALUE for value-equidistant data, this option specifies the increment (difference in amplitude) value between logged data points. A data point is logged only when an output signal or a state changes by <i>incrementvalue</i> .  If you set <i>mode</i> to LGMOD_TIME, <i>incrementvalue</i> is ignored.				
<b>Description</b>	The lgmode structure specifies data logging options. The <i>mode</i> variable accepts either the numeric values 0 or 1 or their equivalent constants LGMOD_TIME or LGMOD_VALUE from xpcapiconst.h.				
<b>See Also</b>	API functions xPCSetLogMode, xPCGetLogMode				

# scopedata

---

**Purpose** Type definition for scope data structure

**Prototype**

```
typedef struct {
    int    number;
    int    type;
    int    state;
    int    signals[10];
    int    numsamples;
    int    decimation;
    int    triggermode;
    int    numprepostsamples;
    int    triggersignal;
    int    triggerscope;
    int    triggerscopesample;
    double triggerlevel;
    int    triggerslope;
} scopedata;
```

**Arguments**

<i>number</i>	The scope number.
<i>type</i>	Determines whether the scope is displayed on the host computer or on the target computer. Values are one of the following:  1      Host 2      Target
<i>state</i>	Indicates the scope state. Values are one of the following:  0      Waiting to start 1      Scope is waiting for a trigger 2      Data is being acquired 3      Acquisition is finished 4      Scope is stopped (interrupted)

	5	Scope is preacquiring data
<i>signals</i>		List of signal indices from the target object to display on the scope.
<i>numsamples</i>		Number of contiguous samples captured during the acquisition of a data package.
<i>decimation</i>		A number, N, meaning every Nth sample is acquired in a scope window.
<i>triggermode</i>		Trigger mode for a scope. Values are one of the following:
	0	FreeRun (default)
	1	Software
	2	Signal
	3	Scope
<i>numprepostsamples</i>		If this value is less than 0, this is the number of samples to be saved before a trigger event. If this value is greater than 0, this is the number of samples to skip after the trigger event before data acquisition begins.
<i>triggersignal</i>		If <i>triggermode</i> = 2 for signal, identifies the block output signal to use for triggering the scope. You identify the signal with a signal index.
<i>triggerscope</i>		If <i>triggermode</i> = 3 for scope, identifies the scope to use for a trigger. A scope can be set to trigger when another scope is triggered.
<i>triggerscopesample</i>		If <i>triggermode</i> = 3 for scope, specifies the number of samples to be acquired by the triggering scope before triggering a second scope. This must be a nonnegative value.

<i>triggerlevel</i>	If <i>triggermode</i> = 2 for signal, indicates the value the signal has to cross to trigger the scope and start acquiring data. The trigger level can be crossed with either a rising or falling signal.
<i>triggerslope</i>	If <i>triggermode</i> = 2 for signal, indicates whether the trigger is on a rising or falling signal. Values are 0      Either rising or falling (default) 1      Rising 2      Falling

## Description

The `scopedata` structure holds the data about a scope used in the functions `xPCGetScope` and `xPCSetScope`. In the structure, the fields are as in the various `xPCGetSc*` functions (for example, *state* is as in `xPCScGetState`, *signals* is as in `xPCScGetSignals`, etc.). The signal vector is an array of the signal identifiers, terminated by -1.

## See Also

API functions `xPCSetScope`, `xPCGetScope`, `xPCScGetType`, `xPCScGetState`, `xPCScGetSignals`, `xPCScGetNumSamples`, `xPCScGetDecimation`, `xPCScGetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetNumPrePostSamples`, `xPCScGetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScGetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScGetTriggerSlope`

**Purpose** Create new scope

**Prototype** `void xPCAddScope(int port, int scType, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scType</i>	Enter the type of scope.
<i>scNum</i>	Enter a number for a new scope. Values are 1, 2, 3. . .

**Description** The `xPCAddScope` function creates a new scope on the target PC. For *scType*, scopes can be of type `host` or `target`, depending on the value of *scType*:

- `SCTYPE_HOST` for type `host`
- `SCTYPE_TARGET` for type `target`
- `SCTYPE_FILE` for type `file`

Constants for *scType* are defined in the header file `xpcapiconst.h` as `SCTYPE_HOST`, `SCTYPE_TARGET`, and `SCTYPE_FILE`.

Calling the `xPCAddScope` function with *scNum* having the number of an existing scope produces an error. Use `xPCGetScopes` to find the numbers of existing scopes.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScAddSignal`, `xPCScRemSignal`, `xPCRemScope`, `xPCSetScope`, `xPCGetScope`, `xPCGetScopes`  
Target object method `addscope`

# xPCAverageTET

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return average task execution time
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>double xPCAverageTET(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCAverageTET</code> function returns the average task execution time (TET) for the target application.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCAverageTET</code> function returns the TET for the target application. You can use this function when the target application is running or when it is stopped.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCMaximumTET</code> , <code>xPCMinimumTET</code> Target object property <code>AvgTET</code>

<b>Purpose</b>	Close RS-232 or TCP/IP communication connection
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>void xPCCloseConnection(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCCloseConnection</code> function closes the RS-232 or TCP/IP communication channel opened by <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> , <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> , or <code>xPCOpenConnection</code> . Unlike <code>xPCClosePort</code> , it preserves the connection information such that a subsequent call to <code>xPCOpenConnection</code> succeeds without the need to resupply communication data such as the IP address or port number. To completely close the communication channel, call <code>xPCDeRegisterTarget</code> . Calling the <code>xPCCloseConnection</code> function followed by calling <code>xPCDeRegisterTarget</code> is equivalent to calling <code>xPCClosePort</code> .
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCOpenConnection</code> , <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> , <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> , <code>xPCReOpenPort</code> , <code>xPCRegisterTarget</code> , <code>xPCDeRegisterTarget</code>

# xPCClosePort

---

**Purpose** Close RS-232 or TCP/IP communication connection

**Prototype** `void xPCClosePort(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function xPCOpenSerialPort or the function xPCOpenTcpIpPort.

**Description** The xPCClosePort function closes the RS-232 or TCP/IP communication channel opened by either xPCOpenSerialPort or by xPCOpenTcpIpPort. Calling this function is equivalent to calling xPCCloseConnection and xPCDeRegisterTarget.

**See Also** API functions xPCOpenSerialPort, xPCOpenTcpIpPort, xPCReOpenPort, xPCOpenConnection, xPCCloseConnection, xPCRegisterTarget, xPCDeRegisterTarget  
Target object method close



**Purpose** Delete target communication properties from xPC Target™ API library

**Prototype** `void xPCDeRegisterTarget(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Description** The `xPCDeRegisterTarget` function causes the xPC Target API library to completely “forget” about the target communication properties. It works similarly to `xPCClosePort`, but does not close the connection to the target machine. Before calling this function, you must first call the function `xPCCloseConnection` to close the connection to the target machine. The combination of calling the `xPCCloseConnection` and `xPCDeRegisterTarget` functions has the same effect as calling `xPCClosePort`.

**See Also** API functions `xPCRegisterTarget`, `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`, `xPCOpenSerialPort`, `xPCClosePort`, `xPCReOpenPort`, `xPCOpenConnection`, `xPCCloseConnection`, `xPCTargetPing`

# xPCErrorMsg

---

- Purpose** Return text description for error message
- Prototype** `char *xPCErrorMsg(int error_number, char *error_message);`
- Arguments**
- error\_number* Enter the constant of an error.
  - error\_message* The `xPCErrorMsg` function copies the error message string into the buffer pointed to by *error\_message*. *error\_message* is then returned. You can later use *error\_message* in a function such as `printf`.  
  
If *error\_message* is `NULL`, the `xPCErrorMsg` function returns a pointer to a statically allocated string.
- Return** The `xPCErrorMsg` function returns a string associated with the error *error\_number*.
- Description** The `xPCErrorMsg` function returns *error\_message*, which makes it convenient to use in a `printf` or similar statement. Use the `xPCGetLastError` function to get the constant for which you are getting the message.
- See Also** API functions `xPCSetLastError`, `xPCGetLastError`

<b>Purpose</b>	Change current directory on target PC to specified path
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long CD(BSTR <i>dir</i>);</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem
<b>Arguments</b>	[in] <i>dir</i> Enter the path on the target PC to change to.
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the method returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCFileSystem.CD method changes the current directory on the target PC to the path specified in <i>dir</i> . Use the xPCFileSystem.PWD method to show the current directory of the target PC.
<b>See Also</b>	API method xPCFileSystem.PWD

# xPCFileSystem.CloseFile

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Close file on target PC		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>CloseFile(long <i>filehandle</i>);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><code>[in] <i>filehandle</i></code></td><td>Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.</td></tr></table>	<code>[in] <i>filehandle</i></code>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.
<code>[in] <i>filehandle</i></code>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.		
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the method returns 0.		
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCFileSystem.CloseFile</code> method closes the file associated with <i>fileHandle</i> on the target PC. <i>fileHandle</i> is the handle of a file previously opened by the <code>xPCFileSystem.OpenFile</code> method.		
<b>See Also</b>	API methods <code>xPCFileSystem.OpenFile</code> , <code>xPCFileSystem.ReadFile</code> , <code>xPCFileSystem.WriteFile</code>		

**Purpose** Return contents of target PC directory

**Prototype** DirList(BSTR *path*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem

**Arguments** [in] *path* Enter the path of the directory.

**Description** The xPCFileSystem.DirList method returns the contents of the target PC directory specified by *path* as an array of the FSDir structure.

**See Also** API structure FSDir  
API method xPCFileSystem.GetDiskInfo

# xPCFileSystem.GetDiskInfo

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return disk information
<b>Prototype</b>	GetDiskInfo(BSTR <i>driveLetter</i> );
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem
<b>Arguments</b>	[in] <i>driveLetter</i> Enter the driver letter that contains the file system.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCFileSystem.GetDiskInfo method accepts as input the drive specified by <i>driveLetter</i> and fills in the fields of the FSDiskInfo structure.
<b>See Also</b>	API structure FSDiskInfo API method xPCFileSystem.DirList

<b>Purpose</b>	Return size of file on target PC		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long GetFileSize(long <i>filehandle</i>);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><code>[in] <i>filehandle</i></code></td><td>Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.</td></tr></table>	<code>[in] <i>filehandle</i></code>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.
<code>[in] <i>filehandle</i></code>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.		
<b>Return</b>	This method returns the size of the specified file in bytes.		
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCFileSystem.GetFileSize</code> method returns the size, in bytes, of the file associated with <i>filehandle</i> on the target PC. <i>filehandle</i> is the handle of a file previously opened by the <code>xPCFileSystem.OpenFile</code> method.		
<b>See Also</b>	API methods <code>xPCFileSystem.OpenFile</code> , <code>xPCFileSystem.ReadFile</code>		

# xPCFileSystem.Init

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Initialize file system object to communicate with target PC		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long Init(IxPCProtocol* xPCProtocol);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] xPCProtocol</td><td>Specify the communication port of the target PC object for which the file system is to be initialized.</td></tr></table>	[in] xPCProtocol	Specify the communication port of the target PC object for which the file system is to be initialized.
[in] xPCProtocol	Specify the communication port of the target PC object for which the file system is to be initialized.		
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the xPCFileSystem.Init method returns 0.		
<b>Description</b>	The xPCFileSystem.Init method initializes the file system object to communicate with the target PC referenced by the xPCProtocol object.		



<b>Purpose</b>	Create directory on target PC
<b>Prototype</b>	long MKDIR(BSTR <i>dirname</i> );
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem
<b>Arguments</b>	[in] <i>dirname</i> Enter the name of the directory to create on the target PC.
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the method returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCFileSystem.MKDIR method creates the directory <i>dirname</i> in the current directory of the target PC.
<b>See Also</b>	API method xPCFileSystem.PWD

# xPCFileSystem.OpenFile

---

**Purpose** Open file on target PC

**Prototype** `long OpenFile(BSTR filename, BSTR permission);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem

**Arguments**

[in] <i>filename</i>	Enter the name of the file to open on the target PC.
[in] <i>permission</i>	Enter the read/write permission with which to open the file. Values are r (read) or w (read/write).

**Return** The xPCFileSystem.OpenFile method returns the file handle for the opened file.

**Description** The xPCFileSystem.OpenFile method opens the specified file, *filename*, on the target PC. If the file does not exist, the xPCFileSystem.OpenFile method creates *filename*, then opens it. You can open a file for read or read/write access.

**See Also** API methods xPCFileSystem.CloseFile, xPCFileSystem.GetFileSize, xPCFileSystem.ReadFile, xPCFileSystem.WriteFile

<b>Purpose</b>	Get current directory of target PC
<b>Prototype</b>	BSTR PWD();
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem
<b>Return</b>	This method returns the path of the current directory on the target PC.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCFileSystem.PWD method places the path of the current directory on the target PC.
<b>See Also</b>	API method xPCFileSystem.CD

# xPCFileSystem.ReadFile

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Read open file on target PC						
<b>Prototype</b>	VARIANT ReadFile(int <i>fileHandle</i> , int <i>start</i> , int <i>numbytes</i> );						
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem						
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>fileHandle</i></td><td>Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>start</i></td><td>Enter an offset from the beginning of the file from which this method can start to read.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>numbytes</i></td><td>Enter the number of bytes this method is to read from the file.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>fileHandle</i>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.	[in] <i>start</i>	Enter an offset from the beginning of the file from which this method can start to read.	[in] <i>numbytes</i>	Enter the number of bytes this method is to read from the file.
[in] <i>fileHandle</i>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.						
[in] <i>start</i>	Enter an offset from the beginning of the file from which this method can start to read.						
[in] <i>numbytes</i>	Enter the number of bytes this method is to read from the file.						
<b>Return</b>	This method returns the results of the read operation as a VARIANT of type Byte. If there is an error, this method returns VT_ERROR, whose value is 10, instead.						
<b>Description</b>	The xPCFileSystem.ReadFile method reads an open file on the target PC and returns the results of the read operation as a VARIANT of type Byte. <i>fileHandle</i> is the file handle of a file previously opened by xPCFileSystem.OpenFile. You can specify that the read operation begin at the beginning of the file (default) or at a certain offset into the file ( <i>start</i> ). The <i>numbytes</i> parameter specifies how many bytes the xPCFileSystem.ReadFile method is to read from the file.						
<b>See Also</b>	API methods xPCFileSystem.CloseFile, xPCFileSystem.GetFileSize, xPCFileSystem.OpenFile, xPCFileSystem.WriteFile						

<b>Purpose</b>	Remove file from target PC
<b>Prototype</b>	long RemoveFile(BSTR <i>filename</i> );
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem
<b>Arguments</b>	[in] <i>filename</i> Enter the name of a file on the target PC.
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the method returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCFileSystem.RemoveFile method removes the file named <i>filename</i> from the target PC file system. <i>filename</i> can be a relative or absolute pathname on the target PC.

# xPCFileSystem.RMDIR

---

**Purpose** Remove directory from target PC

**Prototype** long RMDIR(BSTR *dirname*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem

**Arguments** [in] *dirname* Enter the name of a directory on the target PC.

**Return** If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the method returns 0.

**Description** The xPCFileSystem.RMDIR method removes a directory named *dirname* from the target PC file system. *dirname* can be a relative or absolute pathname on the target PC.



# xPCFileSystem.ScGetWriteMode

---

**Purpose** Get write mode of file for scope

**Prototype** `long ScGetWriteMode(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** This method returns the number indicating the write mode. Values are

- 0 Lazy mode. The FAT entry is updated only when the file is closed and not during each file write operation. This mode is faster, but if the system crashes before the file is closed, the file system might not have the actual file size (the file contents, however, will be intact).
- 1 Commit mode. Each file write operation simultaneously updates the FAT entry for the file. This mode is slower, but the file system always has the actual file size.

**Description** The `xPCFileSystem.ScGetWriteMode` method returns the write mode of the file for the scope.

**See Also** API method `xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteMode`



<b>Purpose</b>	Get block write size of data chunks		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long ScGetWriteSize(long <i>scNum</i>);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><code>[in] <i>scNum</i></code></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	<code>[in] <i>scNum</i></code>	Enter the scope number.
<code>[in] <i>scNum</i></code>	Enter the scope number.		
<b>Return</b>	This method returns the block size, in bytes, of the data chunks.		
<b>Description</b>	The xPCFileSystem.ScGetWriteSize method gets the block size, in bytes, of the data chunks.		
<b>See Also</b>	API method xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteSize		

# xPCFileSystem.ScSetFileName

---

**Purpose** Specify file name to contain signal data

**Prototype** `long ScSetFileName(long scNum, BSTR filename);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>filename</i>	Enter the name of a file to contain the signal data.

**Return** If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the method returns 0.

**Description** The `xPCFileSystem.ScSetFileName` method sets the name of the file to which the scope will save the signal data. The xPC Target™ software creates this file in the target PC file system. Note that you can only call this method when the scope is stopped.

**See Also** API method `xPCFileSystem.ScGetFileName`

**Purpose** Specify when file allocation table entry is updated

**Prototype** `long ScSetWriteMode(long scNum, long writeMode);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>writeMode</i>	Enter an integer for the write mode:
0	Enables lazy write mode
1	Enables commit write mode

**Return** If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the method returns 0.

**Description** The `xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteMode` method specifies when a file allocation table (FAT) entry is updated. Both modes write the signal data to the file, as follows:

- 0 Lazy mode. The FAT entry is updated only when the file is closed and not during each file write operation. This mode is faster, but if the system crashes before the file is closed, the file system might not have the actual file size (the file contents, however, will be intact).
- 1 Commit mode. Each file write operation simultaneously updates the FAT entry for the file. This mode is slower, but the file system always has the actual file size.

**See Also** API method `xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteMode`  
Scope object property `Mode`

# xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteSize

---

**Purpose** Specify that memory buffer collect data in multiples of write size

**Prototype** `long ScSetWriteSize(long scNum, long writeSize);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>writeSize</i>	Enter the block size, in bytes, of the data chunks.

**Return** If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the method returns 0.

**Description** The `xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteSize` method specifies that a memory buffer collect data in multiples of *writeSize*. By default, this parameter is 512 bytes, which is the typical disk sector size. Using a block size that is the same as the disk sector size provides optimal performance. *writeSize* must be a multiple of 512.

**See Also** API method `xPCFileSystem.ScGetWriteSize`  
Scope object property `WriteSize`

<b>Purpose</b>	Write to file on target PC						
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long WriteFile(long <i>fileHandle</i>, long <i>numbytes</i>, VARIANT <i>buffer</i>);</code>						
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCFileSystem						
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>fileHandle</i></td><td>Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>numbytes</i></td><td>Enter the number of bytes this method is to write into the file.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>buffer</i></td><td>The contents to write to <i>fileHandle</i> are stored in <i>buffer</i>.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>fileHandle</i>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.	[in] <i>numbytes</i>	Enter the number of bytes this method is to write into the file.	[in] <i>buffer</i>	The contents to write to <i>fileHandle</i> are stored in <i>buffer</i> .
[in] <i>fileHandle</i>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.						
[in] <i>numbytes</i>	Enter the number of bytes this method is to write into the file.						
[in] <i>buffer</i>	The contents to write to <i>fileHandle</i> are stored in <i>buffer</i> .						
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, this method returns -1. Otherwise, the method returns 0.						
<b>Description</b>	The xPCFileSystem.WriteFile method writes the contents of the VARIANT <i>buffer</i> , of type Byte, to the file specified by <i>fileHandle</i> on the target PC. The <i>fileHandle</i> parameter is the handle of a file previously opened by xPCFSOpenFile. <i>numbytes</i> is the number of bytes to write to the file.						
<b>See Also</b>	API methods xPCFileSystem.CloseFile, xPCFileSystem.GetFileSize, xPCFileSystem.OpenFile, xPCFileSystem.ReadFile						

# xPCFreeAPI

---

**Purpose** Unload xPC Target™ DLL

**Prototype** `int xPCFreeAPI(void);`

**Arguments** none

**Description** The xPCFreeAPI function unloads the xPC Target dynamic link library. You must execute this function once at the end of the application to unload the xPC Target API DLL. This frees the memory allocated to the functions. This function is defined in the file `xpcinitfree.c`. Link this file with your application.

**See Also** API functions `xPCInitAPI`, `xPCNumLogWraps`, `xPCNumLogSamples`, `xPCMaxLogSamples`, `xPCGetStateLog`, `xPCGetTETLog`, `xPCSetLogMode`, `xPCGetLogMode`

<b>Purpose</b>	Change current directory on target PC to specified path				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>void xPCFSCD(int <i>port</i>, char *<i>dir</i>);</code>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>port</i></td><td>Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code>.</td></tr><tr><td><i>dir</i></td><td>Enter the path on the target PC to change to.</td></tr></table>	<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .	<i>dir</i>	Enter the path on the target PC to change to.
<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .				
<i>dir</i>	Enter the path on the target PC to change to.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCFSCD</code> function changes the current directory on the target PC to the path specified in <i>dir</i> . Use the <code>xPCFSGetPWD</code> function to show the current directory of the target PC.				
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCFSGetPWD</code> File object method <code>cd</code>				

# xPCFSCloseFile

---

**Purpose** Close file on target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCFSCloseFile(int port, int fileHandle);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>fileHandle</i>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.

**Description** The `xPCFSCloseFile` function closes the file associated with *fileHandle* on the target PC. *fileHandle* is the handle of a file previously opened by the `xPCFSOpenFile` function.

**See Also** API functions `xPCFSOpenFile`, `xPCFSReadFile`, `xPCFSWriteFile`  
File object method `fclose`



**Purpose** Get contents of specified directory on target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCFSDir(int port, const char *path, char *data, int numbytes);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>path</i>	Enter the path on the target PC.
<i>data</i>	The contents of the directory are stored in <i>data</i> , whose allocated size is specified in <i>numbytes</i> .
<i>numbytes</i>	Enter the size, in bytes, of the array <i>data</i> .

**Description** The `xPCFSDir` function copies the contents of the target PC directory specified by *path* into *data*. The `xPCFSDir` function returns the listing in the *data* array, which must be of size *numbytes*. Use the `xPCFSDirSize` function to obtain the size of the directory for the *numbytes* parameter.

**See Also** API function `xPCFSDirSize`  
File object method `dir`

# xPCFSDirItems

---

**Purpose** Get contents of specified directory on target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCFSDirItems(int port, const char *path, dirStruct *dirs, int numDirItems);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function xPCOpenSerialPort or the function xPCOpenTcpIpPort.
<i>path</i>	Enter the path on the target PC.
<i>dirs</i>	Enter the structure to contain the contents of the directory.
<i>numDirItems</i>	Enter the number of items in the directory.

**Description** The xPCFSDirItems function copies the contents of the target PC directory specified by *path*. The xPCFSDirItems function copies the listing into the *dirs* structure, which must be of size *numDirItems*. Use the xPCFSDirStructSize function to obtain the size of the directory for the *numDirItems* parameter.

**See Also** API functions xPCFSDirStructSize, dirStruct  
File object method dir

<b>Purpose</b>	Return size of specified directory on target PC				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCFSDirSize(int port, const char *path);</code>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>port</i></td><td>Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code>.</td></tr><tr><td><i>path</i></td><td>Enter the directory path on the target PC.</td></tr></table>	<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .	<i>path</i>	Enter the directory path on the target PC.
<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .				
<i>path</i>	Enter the directory path on the target PC.				
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCFSDirSize</code> function returns the size, in bytes, of the specified directory.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCFSDirSize</code> function returns the size, in bytes, of the buffer needed to get the directory listing of the directory on the target PC. Use this size as the <i>numbytes</i> parameter in the <code>xPCFSDir</code> function.				
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCFSDirItems</code> File object method <code>dir</code>				

# xPCFSDirStructSize

---

**Purpose** Get number of items in directory

**Prototype** `int xPCFSDirSize(int port, const char *path);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function xPCOpenSerialPort or the function xPCOpenTcpIpPort.
<i>path</i>	Enter the directory path on the target PC.

**Description** The xPCFSDirStructSize function returns the number of items in the directory on the target PC. Use this size as the *numDirItems* parameter in the xPCFSDirItems function.

**See Also** API function xPCFSDir  
File object method dir

**Purpose** Information about target PC file system

**Prototype** `diskinfo xPCFSDiskInfo(int port, const char *driveletter);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>driveletter</i>	Enter the drive letter of the file system for which you want information.

**Description** The `xPCFSDiskInfo` function returns disk information for the file system of the specified target PC drive, *driveletter*. This function returns this information in the `diskinfo` structure.

**See Also** API structure `diskinfo`

# xPCFSGetError

---

**Purpose** Get text description for error number on target PC file system

**Prototype** `void xPCFSGetError(int port, unsigned int error_number, char *error_message);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>error_number</i>	Enter the constant of an error.
<i>error_message</i>	The string of the message associated with the error <i>error_number</i> is stored in <i>error_message</i> .

**Description** The `xPCFSGetError` function gets the *error\_message* associated with *error\_number*. This enables you to use the error message in a `printf` or similar statement.

**Purpose** Return size of file on target PC

**Prototype** `int xPCFSGetFileSize(int port, int fileHandle);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>fileHandle</i>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.

**Return** Return the size of the specified file in bytes.

**Description** The `xPCFSGetFileSize` function returns the size, in bytes, of the file associated with *fileHandle* on the target PC. *fileHandle* is the handle of a file previously opened by the `xPCFSOpenFile` function.

**See Also** API functions `xPCFSOpenFile`, `xPCFSReadFile`  
File object methods `fopen`, `fread`

# xPCFSGetPWD

---

**Purpose** Get current directory of target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCFSGetPWD(int port, char *pwd);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>pwd</i>	The path of the current directory is stored in <i>pwd</i> .

**Description** The `xPCFSGetPWD` function places the path of the current directory on the target PC in *pwd*, which must be allocated by the caller.

**See Also** File object method `pwd`



**Purpose** Create new directory on target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCFSMKDIR(int port, const char *dirname);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>dirname</i>	Enter the name of the directory to create on the target PC.

**Description** The `xPCFSMKDIR` function creates the directory *dirname* in the current directory of the target PC.

**See Also**

- API function `xPCFSGetPWD`
- File object method `mkdir`

# xPCFSOpenFile

---

**Purpose** Open file on target PC

**Prototype** `int xPCFSOpenFile(int port, const char *filename,  
const char *permission);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>filename</i>	Enter the name of the file to open on the target PC.
<i>permission</i>	Enter the read/write permission with which to open the file. Values are r (read) or w (read/write).

**Return** The `xPCFSOpenFile` function returns the file handle for the opened file. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCFSOpenFile` function opens the specified file, *filename*, on the target PC. If the file does not exist, the `xPCFSOpenFile` function creates *filename*, then opens it. You can open a file for read or read/write access.

**See Also** API functions `xPCFSCloseFile`, `xPCFSGetFileSize`, `xPCFSReadFile`, `xPCFSWriteFile`  
File object methods `fclose`, `filetable`, `fopen`, `fread`, `fwrite`

**Purpose** Read open file on target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCFSReadFile(int port, int fileHandle, int start, int numbytes, unsigned char *data);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>fileHandle</i>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.
<i>start</i>	Enter an offset from the beginning of the file from which this function can start to read.
<i>numbytes</i>	Enter the number of bytes this function is to read from the file.
<i>data</i>	The contents of the file are stored in <i>data</i> .

**Description** The `xPCFSReadFile` function reads an open file on the target PC and places the results of the read operation in the array *data*. *fileHandle* is the file handle of a file previously opened by `xPCFSOpenFile`. You can specify that the read operation begin at the beginning of the file (default) or at a certain offset into the file (*start*). The *numbytes* parameter specifies how many bytes the `xPCFSReadFile` function is to read from the file.

**See Also** API functions `xPCFSCloseFile`, `xPCFSGetFileSize`, `xPCFSOpenFile`, `xPCFSWriteFile`  
File object methods `fopen`, `fread`

# xPCFSRemoveFile

---

**Purpose** Remove file from target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCFSRemoveFile(int port, const char *filename);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>filename</i>	Enter the name of a file on the target PC.

**Description** The `xPCFSRemoveFile` function removes the file named *filename* from the target PC file system. *filename* can be a relative or absolute pathname on the target PC.

**See Also** File object method `removefile`

**Purpose** Remove directory from target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCFSRMDIR(int port, const char *dirname);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>dirname</i>	Enter the name of a directory on the target PC.

**Description** The `xPCFSRMDIR` function removes a directory named *dirname* from the target PC file system. *dirname* can be a relative or absolute pathname on the target PC.

**See Also** File object method `rmdir`

# xPCFSScGetFilename

---

**Purpose** Get name of file for scope

**Prototype** `const char *xPCFSScGetFilename(int port, int scNum, char *filename);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>filename</i>	The name of the file for the specified scope is stored in <i>filename</i> .

**Return** Returns the value of *filename*, the name of the file for the scope.

**Description** The `xPCFSScGetFilename` function returns the name of the file to which scope *scNum* will save signal data. *filename* points to a caller-allocated character array to which the filename is copied.

**See Also** API function `xPCFSScSetFilename`  
Scope object property `Filename`

**Purpose** Get write mode of file for scope

**Prototype** `int xPCFSScGetWriteMode(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** Returns the number indicating the write mode. Values are

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 0 | Lazy mode. The FAT entry is updated only when the file is closed and not during each file write operation. This mode is faster, but if the system crashes before the file is closed, the file system might not have the actual file size (the file contents, however, will be intact). |
| 1 | Commit mode. Each file write operation simultaneously updates the FAT entry for the file. This mode is slower, but the file system always has the actual file size.  |

**Description** The `xPCFSScGetWriteMode` function returns the write mode of the file for the scope.

**See Also** API function `xPCFSScSetWriteMode`  
Scope object property `Mode`

# xPCFSScGetWriteSize

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Get block write size of data chunks				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>unsigned int xPCFSScGetWriteSize(int <i>port</i>, int <i>scNum</i>);</code>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>port</i></td><td>Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code>.</td></tr><tr><td><i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .	<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .				
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
<b>Return</b>	Returns the block size, in bytes, of the data chunks.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCFSScGetWriteSize</code> function gets the block size, in bytes, of the data chunks.				
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCFSScSetWriteSize</code> Scope object property <code>WriteSize</code>				



**Purpose** Specify name for file to contain signal data

**Prototype** `void xPCFSScSetFilename(int port, int scNum,  
const char *filename);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>filename</i>	Enter the name of a file to contain the signal data.

**Description** The `xPCFSScSetFilename` function sets the name of the file to which the scope will save the signal data. The xPC Target™ software creates this file in the target PC file system. Note that you can only call this function when the scope is stopped.

**See Also** API function `xPCFSScGetFilename`  
Scope object property `Filename`

# xPCFSScSetWriteMode

---

**Purpose** Specify when file allocation table entry is updated

**Prototype** `void xPCFSScSetWriteMode(int port, int scNum, int writeMode);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>writeMode</i>	Enter an integer for the write mode: 0 Enables lazy write mode 1 Enables commit write mode

**Description** The `xPCFSScSetWriteMode` function specifies when a file allocation table (FAT) entry is updated. Both modes write the signal data to the file, as follows:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 0 | Lazy mode. The FAT entry is updated only when the file is closed and not during each file write operation. This mode is faster, but if the system crashes before the file is closed, the file system might not have the actual file size (the file contents, however, will be intact). |
| 1 | Commit mode. Each file write operation simultaneously updates the FAT entry for the file. This mode is slower, but the file system always has the actual file size.  |

**See Also** API function `xPCFSScGetWriteMode`  
Scope object property `Mode`

**Purpose** Specify that memory buffer collect data in multiples of write size

**Prototype** `void xPCFSScSetWriteSize(int port, int scNum, unsigned int writeSize);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>writeSize</i>	Enter the block size, in bytes, of the data chunks.

**Description** The `xPCFSScSetWriteSize` function specifies that a memory buffer collect data in multiples of *writeSize*. By default, this parameter is 512 bytes, which is the typical disk sector size. Using a block size that is the same as the disk sector size provides optimal performance. *writeSize* must be a multiple of 512.

**See Also** API function `xPCFSScGetWriteSize`  
Scope object property `WriteSize`

# xPCFSWriteFile

---

**Purpose** Write to file on target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCFSWriteFile(int port, int fileHandle, int numbytes, const unsigned char *data);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>fileHandle</i>	Enter the file handle of an open file on the target PC.
<i>numbytes</i>	Enter the number of bytes this function is to write into the file.
<i>data</i>	The contents to write to <i>fileHandle</i> are stored in <i>data</i> .

**Description** The `xPCFSWriteFile` function writes the contents of the array *data* to the file specified by *fileHandle* on the target PC. The *fileHandle* parameter is the handle of a file previously opened by `xPCFSOpenFile`. *numbytes* is the number of bytes to write to the file.

**See Also** API functions `xPCFSCloseFile`, `xPCFSGetFileSize`, `xPCFSOpenFile`, `xPCFSReadFile`

<b>Purpose</b>	Get version number of xPC Target™ API
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>const char *xPCGetAPIVersion(void);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	none
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCGetAPIVersion</code> function returns a string with the version number of the xPC Target kernel on the target PC.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCGetAPIVersion</code> function returns a string with the version number of the xPC Target kernel on the target PC. The string is a constant string within the API DLL. Do not modify this string.
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCGetTargetVersion</code>

# xPCGetAppName

---

**Purpose** Return target application name

**Prototype** `char *xPCGetAppName(int port, char *model_name);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>model_name</i>	The <code>xPCGetAppName</code> function copies the target application name string into the buffer pointed to by <i>model_name</i> . <i>model_name</i> is then returned. You can later use <i>model_name</i> in a function such as <code>printf</code> .  Note that the maximum size of the buffer is 256 bytes. To ensure that you have enough space for the application name string, allocate a buffer of size 256 bytes.

**Return** The `xPCGetAppName` function returns a string with the name of the target application.

**Description** The `xPCGetAppName` function returns the name of the target application. You can use the return value, *model\_name*, in a `printf` or similar statement. In case of error, the name string is unchanged.

**Examples** Allocate 256 bytes for the buffer `appname`.

```
char *appname=malloc(256);
xPCGetAppName(iport,appname);
appname=realloc(appname,strlen(appname)+1);
...
free(appname);
```

**See Also** API function `xPCIsAppRunning`  
Target object property `Application`

<b>Purpose</b>	Return display mode for target message window				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCGetEcho(int <i>port</i>);</code>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>port</i></td><td>Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code>.</td></tr></table>	<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .		
<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .				
<b>Return</b>	<p>The <code>xPCGetEcho</code> function returns the number indicating the display mode. Values are</p> <table><tr><td>1</td><td>Display is on. Messages are displayed in the message display window on the target.</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Display is off.</td></tr></table>	1	Display is on. Messages are displayed in the message display window on the target.	0	Display is off.
1	Display is on. Messages are displayed in the message display window on the target.				
0	Display is off.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCGetEcho</code> function returns the display mode of the target PC using communication channel <i>port</i> . Messages include the status of downloading the target application, changes to parameters, and changes to scope signals.				
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCSetEcho</code>				

# xPCGetExecTime

---

**Purpose** Return target application execution time

**Prototype** `double xPCGetExecTime(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Return** The `xPCGetExecTime` function returns the current execution time for a target application. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCGetExecTime` function returns the current execution time for the running target application. If the target application is stopped, the value is the last running time when the target application was stopped. If the target application is running, the value is the current running time.

**See Also** API functions `xPCSetStopTime`, `xPCGetStopTime`  
Target object property `ExecTime`



<b>Purpose</b>	Return constant of last error
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCGetLastError(void);</code>
<b>Return</b>	The xPCGetLastError function returns the error constant for the last reported error. If there is no error, this function returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCGetLastError function returns the constant of the last reported error by another API function. This value is reset every time you call a new function. Therefore, you should check this constant value immediately after a call to an API function. For a list of error constants and messages, see Appendix A, “xPC Target™ C API Error Messages”.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions xPCErrorMsg, xPCSetLastError

# xPCGetLoadTimeOut

---

**Purpose** Return timeout value for communication between host PC and target PC

**Prototype** `int xPCGetLoadTimeOut(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Return** The `xPCGetLoadTimeOut` function returns the number of seconds allowed for the communication between the host PC and target application. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCGetLoadTimeOut` function returns the number of seconds allowed for the communication between the host PC and the target application. When an xPC Target™ API function initiates communication between the host PC and target PC, it waits for a certain amount of time before checking to see if the communication is complete. In the case where communication with the target PC is not complete, the function returns a timeout error.

For example, when you load a new target application onto the target PC, the function `xPCLoadApp` waits for a certain amount of time before checking to see if the initialization of the target application is complete. In the case where initialization of the target application is not complete, the function `xPCLoadApp` returns a timeout error. By default, `xPCLoadApp` checks for the readiness of the target PC for up to 5 seconds. However, in the case of larger models or models requiring longer initialization (for example, those with thermocouple boards), the default of about 5 seconds might not be sufficient and a spurious timeout is generated. Other functions that communicate with the target PC will wait for *timeOut* seconds before declaring a timeout event. The function `xPCSetLoadTimeOut` sets the timeout to a different number.

Use the `xPCGetLoadTimeOut` function if you suspect that the current number of seconds (the timeout value) is too short. Then use the `xPCSetLoadTimeOut` function to set the timeout to a higher number.

### **See Also**

API functions xPCLoadApp, xPCSetLoadTimeOut,  
xPCUnloadApp

“Increasing the Time-Out Value” in the Getting Started withxPC Target  
documentation.

# xPCGetLogMode

---

**Purpose** Return logging mode and increment value for target application

**Prototype** `lgmode xPCGetLogMode(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Return** The `xPCGetLogMode` function returns the logging mode in the `lgmode` structure. If the logging mode is 1 (`LGMOD_VALUE`), this function also returns an increment value in the `lgmode` structure. If an error occurs, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCGetLogMode` function gets the logging mode and increment value for the current target application. The increment (difference in amplitude) value is measured between logged data points. A data point is logged only when an output signal or a state changes by the increment value.

**See Also** API function `xPCSetLogMode`  
API structure `lgmode`

<b>Purpose</b>	Return number of outputs
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCGetNumOutputs(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCGetNumOutputs</code> function returns the number of outputs in the current target application. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCGetNumOutputs</code> function returns the number of outputs in the target application. The number of outputs equals the sum of the input signal widths of all output blocks at the root level of the Simulink® model.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCGetOutputLog</code> , <code>xPCGetNumStates</code> , <code>xPCGetStateLog</code>

# xPCGetNumParams

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return number of tunable parameters
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCGetNumParams(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCGetNumParams</code> function returns the number of tunable parameters in the target application. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCGetNumParams</code> function returns the number of tunable parameters in the target application. Use this function to see how many parameters you can get or modify.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCGetParamIdx</code> , <code>xPCSetParam</code> , <code>xPCGetParam</code> , <code>xPCGetParamName</code> , <code>xPCGetParamDims</code> Target object property <code>NumParameters</code>

<b>Purpose</b>	Return number of signals
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCGetNumSignals(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCGetNumSignals</code> function returns the number of signals in the target application. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCGetNumSignals</code> function returns the total number of signals in the target application that can be monitored from the host. Use this function to see how many signals you can monitor.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCGetSignalIdx</code> , <code>xPCGetSignal</code> , <code>xPCGetSignals</code> , <code>xPCGetSignalName</code> , <code>xPCGetSignalWidth</code> Target object property <code>NumSignals</code>

# xPCGetNumStates

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return number of states
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCGetNumStates(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCGetNumStates</code> function returns the number of states in the target application. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCGetNumStates</code> function returns the number of states in the target application.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCGetStateLog</code> , <code>xPCGetNumOutputs</code> , <code>xPCGetOutputLog</code> Target object property <code>StateLog</code>



**Purpose** Copy output log data to array

**Prototype**

```
void xPCGetOutputLog(int port, int first_sample,
int num_samples,
int decimation, int output_id, double *output_data);
```

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>first_sample</i>	Enter the index of the first sample to copy.
<i>num_samples</i>	Enter the number of samples to copy from the output log.
<i>decimation</i>	Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.
<i>output_id</i>	Enter an output identification number.
<i>output_data</i>	The log is stored in <i>output_data</i> , whose allocation is the responsibility of the caller.

**Description** The `xPCGetOutputLog` function gets the output log and copies that log to an array. You get the data for each output signal in turn by specifying *output\_id*. Output IDs range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of `xPCGetNumOutputs`. Entering 1 for *decimation* copies all values. Entering N copies every Nth value.

For *first\_sample*, the sample indices range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of `xPCNumLogSamples`. Get the maximum number of samples by calling the function `xPCNumLogSamples`.

Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.

# xPCGetOutputLog

---

## **See Also**

API functions xPCNumLogWraps, xPCNumLogSamples, xPCMaxLogSamples, xPCGetNumOutputs, xPCGetStateLog, xPCGetTETLog, xPCGetTimeLog

Target object method getlog

Target object property OutputLog

**Purpose** Get parameter value and copy it to array

**Prototype** `void xPCGetParam(int port, int paramIndex, double *paramValue);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>paramIndex</i>	Enter the index for a parameter.
<i>paramValue</i>	The function returns a parameter value as an array of doubles.

**Description** The `xPCGetParam` function returns the parameter as an array in *paramValue*. *paramValue* must be of sufficient size to hold the parameter. You can query the size by calling the function `xPCGetParamDims`. Get the parameter index by calling the function `xPCGetParamIdx`. The parameter matrix is returned as a vector, with the conversion being done in column-major format. It is also returned as a double, regardless of the data type of the actual parameter.

For *paramIndex*, values range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of `xPCGetNumParams`.

**See Also** API functions `xPCSetParam`, `xPCGetParamDims`, `xPCGetParamIdx`, `xPCGetNumParams`

Target object method `getparamid`

Target object properties `ShowParameters`, `Parameters`

# xPCGetParamDims

---

**Purpose** Get row and column dimensions of parameter

**Prototype** `void xPCGetParamDims(int port, int paramIndex, int *dimension);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>paramIndex</i>	Parameter index.
<i>dimension</i>	Dimensions (row, column) of a parameter.

**Description** The `xPCGetParamDims` function gets the dimensions (row, column) of a parameter with *paramIndex* and stores them in *dimension*, which must have at least two elements.

For *paramIndex*, values range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of `xPCGetNumParams`.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetParamIdx`, `xPCGetParamName`, `xPCSetParam`, `xPCGetParam`, `xPCGetNumParams`

Target object method `getparamid`

Target object properties `ShowParameters`, `Parameters`

**Purpose** Return parameter index

**Prototype** `int xPCGetParamIdx(int port, const char *blockName, const char *paramName);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>blockName</i>	Enter the full block path generated by Real-Time Workshop®.
<i>paramName</i>	Enter the parameter name for a parameter associated with the block.

**Return** The `xPCGetParamIdx` function returns the parameter index for the parameter name. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCGetParamIdx` function returns the parameter index for the parameter name (*paramName*) associated with a Simulink® block (*blockName*). Both *blockName* and *paramName* must be identical to those generated at target application building time. The block names should be referenced from the file `model_namept.m` in the generated code, where *model\_name* is the name of the model. Note that a block can have one or more parameters.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetParamDims`, `xPCGetParamName`, `xPCGetParam`  
Target object method `getparamid`  
Target object properties `ShowParameters`, `Parameters`

# xPCGetParamName

---

**Purpose** Get name of parameter

**Prototype**

```
void xPCGetParamName(int port, int paramIdx,
char *blockName, char
*paramName);
```

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function xPCOpenSerialPort or the function xPCOpenTcpIpPort.
<i>paramIdx</i>	Enter a parameter index.
<i>blockName</i>	String with the full block path generated by Real-Time Workshop®.
<i>paramName</i>	Name of a parameter for a specific block.

**Description** The xPCGetParamName function gets the parameter name and block name for a parameter with the index *paramIdx*. The block path and name are returned and stored in *blockName*, and the parameter name is returned and stored in *paramName*. You must allocate sufficient space for both *blockName* and *paramName*. If the *paramIdx* is invalid, xPCGetLastError returns nonzero, and the strings are unchanged. Get the parameter index from the function xPCGetParamIdx.

**See Also** API functions xPCGetParam, xPCGetParamDims, xPCGetParamIdx  
Target object properties ShowParameters, Parameters

<b>Purpose</b>	Return target application sample time
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>double xPCGetSampleTime(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCGetSampleTime</code> function returns the sample time, in seconds, of the target application. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCGetSampleTime</code> function returns the sample time, in seconds, of the target application. You can get the error by using the function <code>xPCGetLastError</code> .
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCSetSampleTime</code> Target object property <code>SampleTime</code>

# xPCGetScope

---

**Purpose** Get and copy scope data to structure

**Prototype** `scopedata xPCGetScope(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCGetScope` function returns a structure of type `scopedata`.

**Description** The `xPCGetScope` function gets properties of a scope with *scNum* and copies the properties into a structure with type `scopedata`. You can use this function in conjunction with `xPCSetScope` to change several properties of a scope at one time. See `scopedata` for a list of properties. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCSetScope`, `scopedata`  
Target object method `getscope`



**Purpose**

Get and copy list of scope numbers

**Prototype**

```
void xPCGetScopes(int port, int *data);
```

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>data</i>	List of scope numbers in an integer array (allocated by the caller) as a list of unsorted integers and terminated by -1.

**Description**

The `xPCGetScopes` function gets the list of scopes currently defined. You can use the constant `MAX_SCOPES` (defined in `xpcapiconst.h`) as the size of *data*. This is currently set to 30 scopes.

**See Also**

API functions `xPCSetScope`, `xPCGetScope`, `xPCScGetSignals`  
Target object property `Scopes`

# xPCGetSignal

---

**Purpose** Return value of signal

**Prototype** `double xPCGetSignal(int port, int sigNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>sigNum</i>	Enter a signal number.

**Return** The `xPCGetSignal` function returns the current value of signal *sigNum*. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCGetSignal` function returns the current value of a signal. For vector signals, use `xPCGetSignals` rather than call this function multiple times. Use the `xPCGetSignalIdx` function to get the signal number.

**See Also** API function `xPCGetSignals`  
Target object properties `ShowSignals`, `Signals`

**Purpose** Return index for signal

**Prototype** `int xPCGetSignalIdx(int port, const char *sigName);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>sigName</i>	Enter a signal name.

**Return** The `xPCGetSignalIdx` function returns the index for the signal with name *sigName*. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCGetSignalIdx` function returns the index of a signal. The name must be identical to the name generated when the application was built. You should reference the name from the file `model_namebio.m` in the generated code, where *model\_name* is the name of the model. The creator of the application should already know the signal name.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetSignalName`, `xPCGetSignalWidth`, `xPCGetSignal`, `xPCGetSignals`

Target object method `getsignalid`

# xPCGetSigIdxfromLabel

---

**Purpose** Return array of signal indices

**Prototype** `int xPCGetSigIdxfromLabel(int port, const char *sigLabel, int *sigIds);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function xPCOpenSerialPort or the function xPCOpenTcpIpPort.
<i>sigLabel</i>	String with the name of a signal label.
<i>sigIds</i>	Return array of signal indices.

**Return** The xPCGetSigIdxfromLabel function fills an array *sigIds* of signal indices. If no signal is found, this function returns -1. It returns zero (0) upon success.

**Description** The xPCGetSigIdxfromLabel function returns in *sigIds* the array of signal indices for signal *sigName*. This function assumes that you have labeled the signal for which you request the indices (see the **Signal name** parameter of the “Signal Properties Dialog Box” in the Simulink® documentation). Note that the xPC Target™ software refers to Simulink signal names as signal labels. The creator of the application should already know the signal name/label.

*sigIds* must be large enough to contain the array of indices. You can use the xPCGetSigLabelWidth function to get the required amount of memory to be allocated by the *sigIds* array.

**See Also** API functions xPCGetSignalLabel, xPCGetSigLabelWidth

**Purpose** Copy label of signal to character array

**Prototype** `char * xPCGetSignalLabel(int port, int sigIdx,  
char *sigLabel);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>sigIdx</i>	Enter signal index.
<i>sigLabel</i>	Return signal label associated with signal index, <i>sigIdx</i> .

**Return** The `xPCGetSignalLabel` function returns the label of the signal.

**Description** The `xPCGetSignalLabel` function copies and returns the signal label, including the block path, of a signal with *sigIdx*. The result is stored in *sigLabel*. If *sigIdx* is invalid, `xPCGetLastError` returns a nonzero value, and *sigLabel* is unchanged. The function returns *sigLabel*, which makes it convenient to use in a `printf` or similar statement. This function assumes that you already know the signal index.

This function assumes that you have labeled the signal for which you request the index (see the **Signal name** parameter of the “Signal Properties Dialog Box” in the Simulink® documentation). Note that the xPC Target™ software refers to Simulink signal names as signal labels. The creator of the application should already know the signal name/label.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetSigIdxfromLabel`, `xPCGetSigLabelWidth`

# xPCGetSigLabelWidth

---

**Purpose** Return number of elements in signal

**Prototype** `int xPCGetSigLabelWidth(int port, const char *sigName);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>sigName</i>	String with the name of a signal.

**Return** The `xPCGetSigLabelWidth` function returns the number of elements that the signal *sigName* contains. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCGetSigLabelWidth` function returns the number of elements that the signal *sigName* contains. This function assumes that you have labeled the signal for which you request the elements (see the **Signal name** parameter of the “Signal Properties Dialog Box” in the Simulink® documentation). Note that the xPC Target™ software refers to Simulink signal names as signal labels. The creator of the application should already know the signal name/label.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetSigIdxfromLabel`, `xPCGetSignalLabel`

**Purpose** Copy name of signal to character array

**Prototype** `char *xPCGetSignalName(int port, int sigIdx,  
char *sigName);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>sigIdx</i>	Enter a signal index.
<i>sigName</i>	String with the name of a signal.

**Return** The `xPCGetSignalName` function returns the name of the signal.

**Description** The `xPCGetSignalName` function copies and returns the signal name, including the block path, of a signal with *sigIdx*. The result is stored in *sigName*. If *sigIdx* is invalid, `xPCGetLastError` returns a nonzero value, and *sigName* is unchanged. The function returns *sigName*, which makes it convenient to use in a `printf` or similar statement. This function assumes that you already know the signal index.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetSignalIdx`, `xPCGetSignalWidth`, `xPCGetSignal`, `xPCGetSignals`

Target object properties `ShowSignals`, `Signals`

# xPCGetSignals

---

**Purpose** Return vector of signal values

**Prototype**

```
int xPCGetSignals(int port, int numSignals,
const int *signals,
double *values);
```

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>numSignals</i>	Enter the number of signals to be acquired (that is, the number of values in <i>signals</i> ).
<i>signals</i>	Enter the list of signal numbers to be acquired.
<i>values</i>	Returned values are stored in the double array <i>values</i> .

**Return** The `xPCGetSignals` function returns 0 upon success. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCGetSignals` function is the vector version of the function `xPCGetSignal`. This function returns the values of a vector of signals (up to 1000) as fast as it can acquire them. The signal values are not guaranteed to be at the same time step (for that, define a scope of type `SCTYPE_HOST` and use `xPCScGetData`). `xPCGetSignal` does the same thing for a single signal, and could be used multiple times to achieve the same effect. However, the `xPCGetSignals` function is faster, and the signal values are more likely to be spaced closely together. The signals are converted to doubles regardless of the actual data type of the signal. For *signals*, the list you provide should be stored in an integer array. Get the signal numbers with the function `xPCGetSignalIdx`.

**See Also** API function `xPCGetSignal`, `xPCGetSignalIdx`

**Example** To reference signal vector data rather than scalar values, pass a vector of indices for the signal data. For example:



```

/*****/

/* Assume a signal of width 10, with the blockpath
 * mySubsys/mySignal and the signal index s1.
 */

int i;
int sigId[10];
double sigVal[10]; /* Signal values are stored here */

/* Get the ID of the first signal */
sigId[0] = xPCGetSignalIdx(port, "mySubsys/mySignal/s1");

if (sigId[0] == -1) {
/* Handle error appropriately */
}

for (i = 1; i < 10; i++) {
    sigId[i] = sigId[0] + i;
}

xPCGetSignals(port, 10, sigId, sigVal);
/* If no error, sigVal should have the signal values */

/*****/

```

To repeatedly get the signals, repeat the call to `xPCGetSignals`. If you do not change `sigID`, you only need to call `xPCGetSignalIdx` once.

# xPCGetSignalWidth

---

**Purpose** Return width of signal

**Prototype** `int xPCGetSignalWidth(int port, int sigIdx);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>sigIdx</i>	Enter the index of a signal.

**Return** The `xPCGetSignalWidth` function returns the signal width for a signal with *sigIdx*. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCGetSignalWidth` function returns the number of signals for a specified signal index. Although signals are manipulated as scalars, the width of the signal might be useful to reassemble the components into a vector again. A signal's width is the number of signals in the vector.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetSignalIdx`, `xPCGetSignalName`, `xPCGetSignal`, `xPCGetSignals`

**Purpose** Copy state log values to array

**Prototype**

```
void xPCGetStateLog(int port, int first_sample,  
int num_samples,  
int decimation, int state_id, double *state_data);
```

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>first_sample</i>	Enter the index of the first sample to copy.
<i>num_samples</i>	Enter the number of samples to copy from the output log.
<i>decimation</i>	Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.
<i>state_id</i>	Enter a state identification number.
<i>state_data</i>	The log is stored in <i>state_data</i> , whose allocation is the responsibility of the caller.

**Description** The `xPCGetStateLog` function gets the state log. It then copies the log into *state\_data*. You get the data for each state signal in turn by specifying the *state\_id*. State IDs range from 1 to (N-1), where N is the return value of `xPCGetNumStates`. Entering 1 for *decimation* copies all values. Entering N copies every Nth value. For *first\_sample*, the sample indices range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of `xPCNumLogSamples`. Use the `xPCNumLogSamples` function to get the maximum number of samples.

Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.

# xPCGetStateLog

---

## See Also

API functions `xPCNumLogWraps`, `xPCNumLogSamples`, `xPCMaxLogSamples`, `xPCGetNumStates`, `xPCGetOutputLog`, `xPCGetTETLog`, `xPCGetTimeLog`

Target object method `getlog`

Target object property `StateLog`

**Purpose** Return stop time

**Prototype** `double xPCGetStopTime(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Return** The `xPCGetStopTime` function returns the stop time as a double, in seconds, of the target application. If there is an error, this function returns `-10.0`. If the stop time is infinity (run forever), this function returns `-1.0`.

**Description** The `xPCGetStopTime` function returns the stop time, in seconds, of the target application. This is the amount of time the target application runs before stopping. If there is an error, this function returns `-10.0`. You will then need to use the function `xPCGetLastError` to find the error number.

**See Also** API function `xPCSetStopTime`  
Target object property `StopTime`

# xPCGetTargetVersion

---

**Purpose** Get xPC Target™ kernel version

**Prototype** `void xPCGetTargetVersion(int port, char *ver);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>ver</i>	The version is stored in <i>ver</i> .

**Description** The `xPCGetTargetVersion` function gets a string with the version number of the xPC Target kernel on the target PC. It then copies that version number into *ver*.

**See Also** `xPCGetAPIVersion`

**Purpose** Copy TET log to array

**Prototype**

```
void xPCGetTETLog(int port, int first_sample,
int num_samples, int decimation,
double *TET_data);
```

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>first_sample</i>	Enter the index of the first sample to copy.
<i>num_samples</i>	Enter the number of samples to copy from the TET log.
<i>decimation</i>	Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.
<i>TET_data</i>	The log is stored in <i>TET_data</i> , whose allocation is the responsibility of the caller.

**Description** The `xPCGetTETLog` function gets the task execution time (TET) log. It then copies the log into *TET\_data*. Entering 1 for *decimation* copies all values. Entering N copies every Nth value. For *first\_sample*, the sample indices range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of `xPCNumLogSamples`. Use the `xPCNumLogSamples` function to get the maximum number of samples.

Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCNumLogWraps`, `xPCNumLogSamples`, `xPCMaxLogSamples`, `xPCGetNumOutputs`, `xPCGetStateLog`, `xPCGetTimeLog`

Target object method `getlog`

Target object property `TETLog`

# xPCGetTimeLog

---

**Purpose** Copy time log to array

**Prototype** `void xPCGetTimeLog(int port, int first_sample,  
int num_samples,  
int decimation, double *time_data);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>first_sample</i>	Enter the index of the first sample to copy.
<i>num_samples</i>	Enter the number of samples to copy from the time log.
<i>decimation</i>	Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.
<i>time_data</i>	The log is stored in <i>time_data</i> , whose allocation is the responsibility of the caller.

**Description** The `xPCGetTimeLog` function gets the time log and copies the log into *time\_data*. This is especially relevant in the case of value-equidistant logging, where the logged values are not necessarily uniformly spaced in time. Entering 1 for *decimation* copies all values. Entering N copies every Nth value. For *first\_sample*, the sample indices range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of `xPCNumLogSamples`. Use the `xPCNumLogSamples` function to get the number of samples.

Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.



<b>Purpose</b>	Initialize xPC Target™ DLL
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCInitAPI(void);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	none
<b>Return</b>	The xPCInitAPI function returns 0 upon success. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCInitAPI function initializes the xPC Target dynamic link library. You must execute this function once at the beginning of the application to load the xPC Target API DLL. This function is defined in the file <code>xpcinitfree.c</code> . Link this file with your application.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCFreeAPI</code> , <code>xPCNumLogWraps</code> , <code>xPCNumLogSamples</code> , <code>xPCMaxLogSamples</code> , <code>xPCGetStateLog</code> , <code>xPCGetTETLog</code> , <code>xPCSetLogMode</code> , <code>xPCGetLogMode</code>

# xPCIsAppRunning

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return target application running status
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCIsAppRunning(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	If the target application is stopped, the <code>xPCIsAppRunning</code> function returns 0. If the target application is running, this function returns 1. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCIsAppRunning</code> function returns 1 or 0 depending on whether the target application is stopped or running. If there is an error, use the function <code>xPCGetLastError</code> to check for the error string constant.
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCIsOverloaded</code> Target object property <code>Status</code>

<b>Purpose</b>	Return target PC overload status
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCIsOverloaded(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	If the application is running properly, the <code>xPCIsOverloaded</code> function returns 1. If the CPU is overloaded, the <code>xPCIsOverloaded</code> function returns 0. In case of error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCIsOverloaded</code> function returns 1 if the target application is running properly and has not overloaded the CPU. It returns 0 if the target application has overloaded the target PC (CPU Overload).
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCIsAppRunning</code> Target object property <code>CPUOverload</code>

# xPCIsScFinished

---

**Purpose** Return data acquisition status for scope

**Prototype** `int xPCIsScFinished(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** If a scope finishes a data acquisition cycle, the `xPCIsScFinished` function returns 1. If the scope is in the process of acquiring data, this function returns 0. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCIsScFinished` function returns a Boolean value depending on whether scope *scNum* is finished (state of `SCST_FINISHED`) or not. You can also call this function for scopes of type `target`; however, because `target` scopes restart immediately, it is almost impossible to find these scopes in the finished state. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API function `xPCScGetState`  
Scope object property `Status`

**Purpose** Load target application onto target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCLoadApp(int port, const char *pathstr, const char *filename);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>pathstr</i>	Enter the full path to the target application file, excluding the file name. For example, in C, use a string like "C:\\work".
<i>filename</i>	Enter the name of a compiled target application (*.dlm) without the file extension. For example, in C use a string like "xpcosc".

**Description** The `xPCLoadApp` function loads the compiled target application to the target PC. *pathstr* must not contain the trailing backslash. *pathstr* can be set to `NULL` or to the string 'nopath' if the application is in the current directory. The variable *filename* must not contain the target application extension.

Before returning, `xPCLoadApp` waits for a certain amount of time before checking whether the model initialization is complete. In the case where the model initialization is incomplete, `xPCLoadApp` returns a timeout error to indicate a connection problem (for example, `ETCPREAD`). By default, `xPCLoadApp` checks for target readiness five times, with each attempt taking approximately 1 second (less if the target is ready). However, in the case of larger models or models requiring longer initialization (for example, those with thermocouple boards), the default of about 5 seconds might be insufficient and a spurious timeout can be generated. The functions `xPCGetLoadTimeOut` and `xPCSetLoadTimeOut` control the number of attempts made.

# xPCLoadApp

---

## **See Also**

API functions xPCStartApp, xPCStopApp, xPCUnloadApp,  
xPCSetLoadTimeOut, xPCGetLoadTimeOut

Target object method load

**Purpose** Restore parameter values

**Prototype** `void xPCLoadParamSet(int port, const char *filename);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>filename</i>	Enter the name of the file that contains the saved parameters.

**Description** The `xPCLoadParamSet` function restores the target application parameter values saved in the file *filename*. This file must be located on a local drive of the target PC. The parameter file must have been saved from a previous call to `xPCSaveParamSet`.

**See Also** API function `xPCSaveParamSet`

# xPCMaxLogSamples

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return maximum number of samples that can be in log buffer
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCMaxLogSamples(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCMaxLogSamples</code> function returns the total number of samples. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCMaxLogSamples</code> function returns the total number of samples that can be returned in the logging buffers.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCNumLogSamples</code> , <code>xPCNumLogWraps</code> , <code>xPCGetStateLog</code> , <code>xPCGetOutputLog</code> , <code>xPCGetTETLog</code> , <code>xPCGetTimeLog</code> Target object property <code>MaxLogSamples</code>



**Purpose** Copy maximum task execution time to array

**Prototype** `void xPCMaximumTET(int port, double *data);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>data</i>	Array of at least two doubles.

**Description** The `xPCMaximumTET` function gets the maximum task execution time (TET) that was achieved during the previous target application run. This function also returns the time at which the maximum TET was achieved. The `xPCMaximumTET` function then copies these values into the *data* array. The maximum TET value is copied into the first element, and the time at which it was achieved is copied into the second element.

**See Also** API functions `xPCMinimumTET`, `xPCAverageTET`  
Target object property `MaxTET`

# xPCMinimumTET

---

**Purpose** Copy minimum task execution time to array

**Prototype** `void xPCMinimumTET(int port, double *data);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>data</i>	Array of at least two doubles.

**Description** The `xPCMinimumTET` function gets the minimum task execution time (TET) that was achieved during the previous target application run. This function also returns the time at which the minimum TET was achieved. The `xPCMinimumTET` function then copies these values into the *data* array. The minimum TET value is copied into the first element, and the time at which it was achieved is copied into the second element.

**See Also** API functions `xPCMaximumTET`, `xPCAverageTET`  
Target object property `MinTET`

<b>Purpose</b>	Return number of samples in log buffer
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCNumLogSamples(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCNumLogSamples</code> function returns the number of samples in the log buffer. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>xPCNumLogSamples</code> function returns the number of samples in the log buffer. In contrast to <code>xPCMaxLogSamples</code>, which returns the maximum number of samples that can be logged (because of buffer size constraints), <code>xPCNumLogSamples</code> returns the number of samples actually logged.</p> <p>Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.</p>
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCGetStateLog</code> , <code>xPCGetOutputLog</code> , <code>xPCGetTETLog</code> , <code>xPCGetTimeLog</code> , <code>xPCMaxLogSamples</code>

# xPCNumLogWraps

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return number of times log buffer wraps
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCNumLogWraps(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCNumLogWraps</code> function returns the number of times the log buffer wraps. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCNumLogWraps</code> function returns the number of times the log buffer wraps.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCNumLogSamples</code> , <code>xPCMaxLogSamples</code> , <code>xPCGetStateLog</code> , <code>xPCGetOutputLog</code> , <code>xPCGetTETLog</code> , <code>xPCGetTimeLog</code> Target object property <code>NumLogWraps</code>

**Purpose** Open connection to target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCOpenConnection(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Description** The `xPCOpenConnection` function opens a connection to the target PC whose data is indexed by *port*. Before calling this function, set up the target information by calling `xPCRegisterTarget`. A call to either `xPCOpenSerialPort` or `xPCOpenTcpIpPort` can also set up the target information. If the port is already open, calling this function has no effect.

**See Also** API functions `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`, `xPCClosePort`, `xPCReOpenPort`, `xPCTargetPing`, `xPCCloseConnection`, `xPCRegisterTarget`

# xPCOpenSerialPort

---

**Purpose** Open RS-232 connection to xPC Target™ system

**Prototype** `int xPCOpenSerialPort(int comPort, int baudRate);`

**Arguments**

<i>comPort</i>	Index of the COM port to be used (0 is COM1, 1 is COM2, and so forth).
<i>baudRate</i>	<i>baudRate</i> must be one of the following values: 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200.

**Return** The xPCOpenSerialPort function returns the port value for the connection. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The xPCOpenSerialPort function initiates an RS-232 connection to an xPC Target system. It returns the port value for the connection. Be sure to pass this value to all the xPC Target API functions that require a port value.

If you enter a value of 0 for *baudRate*, this function sets the baud rate to the default value (115200).

**See Also** API functions xPCOpenTcpIpPort, xPCClosePort, xPCReOpenPort, xPCTargetPing, xPCOpenConnection, xPCCloseConnection, xPCRegisterTarget, xPCDeRegisterTarget

<b>Purpose</b>	Open TCP/IP connection to xPC Target™ system				
<b>Prototype</b>	<pre>int xPCOpenTcpIpPort(const char *ipAddress, const char *ipPort);</pre>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>ipAddress</i></td><td>Enter the IP address of the target as a dotted decimal string. For example, "192.168.0.10".</td></tr><tr><td><i>ipPort</i></td><td>Enter the associated IP port as a string. For example, "22222".</td></tr></table>	<i>ipAddress</i>	Enter the IP address of the target as a dotted decimal string. For example, "192.168.0.10".	<i>ipPort</i>	Enter the associated IP port as a string. For example, "22222".
<i>ipAddress</i>	Enter the IP address of the target as a dotted decimal string. For example, "192.168.0.10".				
<i>ipPort</i>	Enter the associated IP port as a string. For example, "22222".				
<b>Return</b>	The xPCOpenTcpIpPort function returns a nonnegative integer that you can then use as the port value for any xPC Target API function that requires it. If this operation fails, this function returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The xPCOpenTcpIpPort function opens a connection to the TCP/IP location specified by the IP address. It returns a nonnegative integer if it succeeds. Use this integer as the <i>ipPort</i> variable in the xPC Target API functions that require a port value. The global error number is also set, which you can get using xPCGetLastError.				
<b>See Also</b>	API functions xPCOpenSerialPort, xPCClosePort, xPCReOpenPort, xPCTargetPing				

## xPCProtocol.Close

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Close RS-232 or TCP/IP communication connection
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long Close();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol</code>
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCProtocol.Close</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCProtocol.Close</code> method closes the communication channel opened by <code>xPCProtocol.RS232Connect</code> or <code>xPCProtocol.TcpIpConnect</code> .



<b>Purpose</b>	Return current timeout value for target application initialization
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long GetLoadTimeOut();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol</code>
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCProtocol.GetLoadTimeOut</code> method returns -1. Upon success, this method returns the number of seconds allowed for the initialization of the target application.
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>xPCProtocol.GetLoadTimeOut</code> method returns the number of seconds allowed for the initialization of the target application.</p> <p>When you load a new target application onto the target PC, the method <code>xPCTarget.LoadApp</code> waits for a certain amount of time before checking to see whether the initialization of the target application is complete. In the case where initialization of the target application is not complete, the method <code>xPCTarget.LoadApp</code> returns a timeout error. By default, <code>xPCTarget.LoadApp</code> checks five times to see whether the target application is ready, with each attempt taking about 1 second. However, in the case of larger models or models requiring longer initialization (for example, those with thermocouple boards), the default of about 5 seconds might not be sufficient and a spurious timeout is generated. The method <code>xPCProtocol.SetLoadTimeOut</code> sets the timeout to a different number.</p> <p>Use the <code>xPCProtocol.GetLoadTimeOut</code> method if you suspect that the current number of seconds (the timeout value) is too short. Then use the <code>xxPCProtocol.SetLoadTimeOut</code> method to set the timeout to a higher number.</p>

# xPCProtocol.GetxPCErrorMsg

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return error string
<b>Prototype</b>	BSTR GetxPCErrorMsg();
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol
<b>Return</b>	Upon success, the xPCProtocol.GetxPCErrorMsg method returns the string for the last reported error.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCProtocol.GetxPCErrorMsg method returns the string of the last error reported by another COM API method. This value is reset every time you call a new method. Therefore, you should check this constant value immediately after a call to an API COM method. You can use this method in conjunction with the xPCProtocol.isxPCError method, which detects that an error has occurred.
<b>See Also</b>	API function xPCProtocol.isxPCError

<b>Purpose</b>	Initialize xPC Target™ API DLL
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long Init();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol</code>
<b>Return</b>	If the xPC Target DLL, <code>xpcapi.dll</code> , loads successfully, the <code>xPCProtocol.Init</code> method returns 0. If <code>xpcapi.dll</code> fails to load, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>xPCProtocol.Init</code> method initializes the xPC Target API by loading the xPC Target DLL, <code>xpcapi.dll</code>, into memory. To load <code>xpcapi.dll</code> into memory, the method requires that the <code>xpcapi.dll</code> file be in one of the following directories:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The directory in which the application is loaded</li><li>• The current directory</li><li>• The Windows® system directory</li></ul>

# xPCProtocol.isxPCError

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return error status
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long isxPCError();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCProtocol
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCProtocol.isxPCError</code> method returns 1. Upon success, this method returns the error status.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCProtocol.isxPCError</code> method returns the error status. Use this method to check for any errors that might occur after a call to any of the <code>xPCProtocol</code> class methods. If there is an error, call the <code>xPCProtocol.GetxPCErrorMsg</code> to get the string for the error.
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCProtocol.GetxPCErrorMsg</code>

<b>Purpose</b>	Contain communication channel index
<b>Prototype</b>	long Port();
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCProtocol
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the xPCProtocol.Port method returns a nonpositive number. Upon success, this method returns a positive number (the communication channel index).
<b>Description</b>	The xPCProtocol.Port property contains the communication channel index if connection with the target PC succeeds. Note that you only need to use this property when working with a model-specific COM library that you generate from a Simulink® model. See “Model-Specific COM Interface Library (model_nameCOMiface.dll)” on page 3-18.

# xPCProtocol.Reboot

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Reboot target PC
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long Reboot();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol</code>
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCProtocol.Reboot</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCProtocol.Reboot</code> method reboots the target PC. This function does not close the connection to the target PC. You should explicitly close the connection, then reestablish the connection once the target PC has rebooted. Use the methods <code>xPCProtocol.RS232Connect</code> or <code>xPCProtocol.TcpIpConnect</code> to reestablish the connection.

<b>Purpose</b>	Open RS-232 connection to target PC				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long RS232Connect(long <i>comport</i>, long <i>baudrate</i>);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>comport</i></td><td>Index of the COM port to be used (0 is COM1, 1 is COM2, and so forth).</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>baudrate</i></td><td><i>baudrate</i> must be one of the following values: 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>comport</i>	Index of the COM port to be used (0 is COM1, 1 is COM2, and so forth).	[in] <i>baudrate</i>	<i>baudrate</i> must be one of the following values: 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200.
[in] <i>comport</i>	Index of the COM port to be used (0 is COM1, 1 is COM2, and so forth).				
[in] <i>baudrate</i>	<i>baudrate</i> must be one of the following values: 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200.				
<b>Return</b>	The xPCProtocol.RS232Connect method returns the port value for the connection. If there is an error, this method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	<p>The xPCProtocol.RS232Connect method initiates an RS-232 connection to an xPC Target™ system. It returns the port value for the connection. Be sure to pass this value to all the xPC Target API functions that require a port value.</p> <p>If you enter a value of 0 for <i>baudrate</i>, this function sets the baud rate to the default value (115200).</p>				

# xPCProtocol.SetLoadTimeOut

---

**Purpose** Change initialization timeout value

**Prototype** `long SetLoadTimeOut(long timeOut);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol

**Arguments** [in] *timeOut* Enter the new initialization timeout value.

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCProtocol.SetLoadTimeOut` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1. To get the string description for the error, use `xPCProtocol.GetxPCErrorMsg`.

**Description** The `xPCProtocol.SetLoadTimeOut` method changes the timeout value for initialization. The *timeOut* value is the time the method `xPCTarget.LoadApp` waits to check whether the model initialization for a new application is complete before returning. It enables you to set the number of initialization attempts to be made before signaling a timeout. When a new target application is loaded onto the target PC, the method `xPCTarget.LoadApp` waits for a certain time to check whether the model initialization is complete before returning. If the model initialization is incomplete within the allotted time, `xPCTarget.LoadApp` returns a timeout error.

By default, `xPCTarget.LoadApp` checks for target readiness five times, with each attempt taking approximately 1 second (less if the target is ready). However, in the case of larger models or models requiring longer initialization (for example, models with thermocouple boards), the default of about 5 seconds might be insufficient and a spurious timeout can be generated.



<b>Purpose</b>	Ping target PC
<b>Prototype</b>	long TargetPing;
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCProtocol
<b>Return</b>	The xPCProtocol.TargetPing method does not return an error status. This method returns 1 if it successfully reaches the target. If the target PC does not respond, the method returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	<p>The xPCProtocol.TargetPing method pings the target PC and returns 1 or 0 depending on whether the target responds or not. All errors, such as the inability to connect to the target, are ignored.</p> <p>If you are using TCP/IP, note that xPCProtocol.xPCTargetPing will cause the target PC to close the TCP/IP connection. You can use xPCProtocol.TcpIpConnect to reconnect. You can also use this xPCProtocol.xPCTargetPing feature to close the target PC connection in the event of an aborted TCP/IP connection (for example, if your host side program crashes).</p>

# xPCProtocol.TcpIpConnect

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Open TCP/IP connection to target PC				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long TcpIpConnect(BSTR <i>TargetIpAddress</i>, BSTR <i>TargetPort</i>);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCProtocol				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>TargetIpAddress</i></td><td>Enter the IP address of the target as a dotted decimal string. For example, "192.168.0.10".</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>TargetPort</i></td><td>Enter the associated IP port as a string. For example, "22222".</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>TargetIpAddress</i>	Enter the IP address of the target as a dotted decimal string. For example, "192.168.0.10".	[in] <i>TargetPort</i>	Enter the associated IP port as a string. For example, "22222".
[in] <i>TargetIpAddress</i>	Enter the IP address of the target as a dotted decimal string. For example, "192.168.0.10".				
[in] <i>TargetPort</i>	Enter the associated IP port as a string. For example, "22222".				
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the xPCProtocol.TcpIpConnect method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The xPCProtocol.TcpIpConnect method opens a connection to the TCP/IP location specified by the IP address. Use this integer as the <i>TargetPort</i> variable in the xPC Target™ COM API functions that require a port value.				

<b>Purpose</b>	Unload xPC Target™ API DLL from memory
<b>Prototype</b>	long Term();
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCProtocol
<b>Return</b>	The xPCProtocol.Term method always returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCProtocol.Term method unloads the xPC Target API DLL (xpcapi.dll) from memory. You must call this method when you want to terminate your COM API application.

# xPCReboot

---

**Purpose** Reboot target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCReboot(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Description** The `xPCReboot` function reboots the target PC. This function returns nothing. This function does not close the connection to the target PC. You should either explicitly close the port or call `xPCReOpenPort` once the target PC has rebooted.

**See Also** API function `xPCReOpenPort`  
Target object method `reboot`

<b>Purpose</b>	Reopen communication channel
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCReOpenPort(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCReOpenPort</code> function returns 0 if it successfully reopens a connection. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCReOpenPort</code> function reopens the communications channel pointed to by <i>port</i> . The difference between this function and <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> is that <code>xPCReOpenPort</code> uses the already existing settings, while the other functions need to be set up properly.
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> , <code>xPCClosePort</code>

# xPCRegisterTarget

---

**Purpose** Register target with xPC Target™ API library

**Prototype** `int xPCRegisterTarget(int commType, const char *ipAddress, const char *ipPort, int comPort, int baudRate);`

**Arguments**

*commType* Specify the communication type (TCP/IP or RS-232) between the host and the target.

*ipAddress* Enter the IP address of the target as a dotted decimal string. For example, "192.168.0.10".

*ipPort* Enter the associated IP port as a string. For example, "22222".

*comPort* *comPort* and *baudRate* are as in xPCOpenSerialPort.

*baudRate* The *baudRate* must be one of the following values: 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400, 57600, or 115200.

**Return** The xPCRegisterTarget function returns the port number.

**Description** The xPCRegisterTarget function works similarly to xPCOpenSerialPort and xPCOpenTcpIpPort, except that it does not try to open a connection to the target PC. In other words, xPCOpenSerialPort or xPCOpenTcpIpPort is equivalent to calling xPCRegisterTarget with the appropriate parameters, followed by a call to xPCOpenConnection.

Use the constants COMMTYP\_TCPIP and COMMTYP\_RS232 for *commType*. If *commType* is set to COMMTYP\_RS232, the function ignores *ipAddress* and *ipPort*. Analogously, the function ignores *comPort* and *baudRate* if *commType* is set to COMMTYP\_TCPIP.

If you enter a value of 0 for *baudRate*, this function sets the baud rate to the default value (115200).

### **See Also**

API functions xPCDeRegisterTarget, xPCOpenTcpIpPort, xPCOpenSerialPort, xPCClosePort, xPCReOpenPort, xPCOpenConnection, xPCCloseConnection, xPCTargetPing

# xPCRemScope

---

**Purpose** Remove scope

**Prototype** `void xPCRemScope(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Description** The `xPCRemScope` function removes the scope with number *scNum*. Attempting to remove a nonexistent scope causes an error. For a list of existing scopes, see `xPCGetScopes`. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCAddScope`, `xPCScRemSignal`, `xPCGetScopes`  
Target object method `remscope`



**Purpose** Save parameter values of target application

**Prototype** `void xPCSaveParamSet(int port, const char *filename);`

**Arguments**

*port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

*filename* Enter the name of the file to contain the saved parameters.

**Description** The `xPCSaveParamSet` function saves the target application parameter values in the file *filename*. This function saves the file on a local drive of the current target PC. You can later reload these parameters with the `xPCLoadParamSet` function.

You might want to save target application parameter values if you change these parameter values while the application is running in real time. Saving these values enable you to easily recreate target application parameter values from a number of application runs.

**See Also** API function `xPCLoadParamSet`

# xPCScAddSignal

---

**Purpose** Add signal to scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScAddSignal(int port, int scNum, int sigNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>sigNum</i>	Enter a signal number.

**Description** The `xPCScAddSignal` function adds the signal with number *sigNum* to the scope *scNum*. The signal should not already exist in the scope. You can use `xPCScGetSignals` to get a list of the signals already present. Use the function `xPCGetScope` to get the scope number. Use the `xPCGetSignalIdx` function to get the signal number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScRemSignal`, `xPCAddScope`, `xPCRemScope`, `xPCGetScopes`  
Scope object method `addsignal`

**Purpose** Copy scope data to array

**Prototype**

```
void xPCScGetData(int port, int scNum, int signal_id, int start, int numsamples, int decimation, double *data);
```

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>signal_id</i>	Enter a signal number.
<i>start</i>	Enter the first sample from which data retrieval is to start
<i>numsamples</i>	Enter the number of samples retrieved with a decimation of <i>decimation</i> , starting from the <i>start</i> value.
<i>decimation</i>	Enter a value such that every <i>decimation</i> sample is retrieved in a scope window.
<i>data</i>	The data is available in the array <i>data</i> , starting from sample <i>start</i> .

**Description** The `xPCScGetData` function gets the data used in a scope. Use this function for scopes of type `SCTYPE_HOST`. The scope must be either in state "Finished" or in state "Interrupted" for the data to be retrievable. (Use the `xPCScGetState` function to check the state of the scope.) The data must be retrieved one signal at a time. The calling function must allocate the space ahead of time to store the scope data. *data* must be an array of doubles, regardless of the data type of the signal to be retrieved. Use the function `xPCScGetSignals` to get the list of signals in the scope for *signal\_id*. Use the function `xPCGetScope` to get the scope number for *scNum*.

## xPCScGetData

---

### **See Also**

API functions xPCGetScope, xPCScGetState, xPCScGetSignals

Scope object property Data

**Purpose** Return decimation of scope

**Prototype** `int xPCScGetDecimation(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScGetDecimation` function returns the decimation of scope *scNum*. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScGetDecimation` function gets the decimation of scope *scNum*. The decimation is a number, N, meaning every Nth sample is acquired in a scope window. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also**

- API function `xPCScSetDecimation`
- Scope object property `Decimation`

# xPCScGetNumPrePostSamples

---

**Purpose** Get number of pre- or posttriggering samples before triggering scope

**Prototype** `int xPCScGetNumPrePostSamples(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScGetNumPrePostSamples` function returns the number of samples for pre- or posttriggering for scope *scNum*. If an error occurs, this function returns the minimum integer value (-2147483647-1).

**Description** The `xPCScGetNumPrePostSamples` function gets the number of samples for pre- or posttriggering for scope *scNum*. A negative number implies pretriggering, whereas a positive number implies posttriggering samples. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API function `xPCScSetNumPrePostSamples`  
Scope object property `NumPrePostSamples`

<b>Purpose</b>	Get number of samples in one data acquisition cycle				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCScGetNumSamples(int <i>port</i>, int <i>scNum</i>);</code>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>port</i></td><td>Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code>.</td></tr><tr><td><i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .	<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .				
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCScGetNumSamples</code> function returns the number of samples in the scope <i>scNum</i> . If there is an error, this function returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScGetNumSamples</code> function gets the number of samples in one data acquisition cycle for scope <i>scNum</i> . Use the <code>xPCGetScope</code> function to get the scope number.				
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCScSetNumSamples</code> Scope object property <code>NumSamples</code>				

# xPCScGetSignals

---

**Purpose** Copy list of signals to array

**Prototype** `void xPCScGetSignals(int port, int scNum, int *data);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>data</i>	Integer array allocated by the caller as a list containing the signal identifiers, terminated by -1.

**Description** The `xPCScGetSignals` function gets the list of signals defined for scope *scNum*. You can use the constant `MAX_SIGNALS`, defined in `xpcapiconst.h`, as the size of *data*. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScGetData`, `xPCGetScopes`  
Scope object property `Signals`



<b>Purpose</b>	Get start time for last data acquisition cycle				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>double xPCScGetStartTime(int <i>port</i>, int <i>scNum</i>);</code>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>port</i></td><td>Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code>.</td></tr><tr><td><i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .	<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .				
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCScGetStartTime</code> function returns the start time for the last data acquisition cycle of a scope. If there is an error, this function returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScGetStartTime</code> function gets the time at which the last data acquisition cycle for scope <i>scNum</i> started. This is only valid for scopes of type <code>SCTYPE_HOST</code> . Use the <code>xPCGetScope</code> function to get the scope number.				
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCScGetNumSamples</code> , <code>xPCScGetDecimation</code> Scope object property <code>StartTime</code>				

# xPCScGetState

---

**Purpose** Get state of scope

**Prototype** `int xPCScGetState(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

*port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

*scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScGetState` function returns the state of scope *scNum*. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScGetState` function gets the state of scope *scNum*, or -1 upon error. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

Constants to find the scope state, defined in `xpcapiconst.h`, have the following meanings:

Constant	Value	Description
SCST_WAITTOSTART	0	Scope is ready and waiting to start.
SCST_PREACQUIRING	5	Scope acquires a predefined number of samples before triggering.
SCST_WAITFORTRIG	1	After a scope is finished with the preacquiring state, it waits for a trigger. If the scope does not preacquire data, it enters the wait for trigger state.
SCST_ACQUIRING	2	Scope is acquiring data. The scope enters this state when it leaves the wait for trigger state.

Constant	Value	Description
SCST_FINISHED	3	Scope is finished acquiring data when it has attained the predefined limit.
SCST_INTERRUPTED	4	The user has stopped (interrupted) the scope.

## See Also

API functions `xPCScStart`, `xPCScStop`

Scope object property `Status`

# xPCScGetTriggerLevel

---

**Purpose** Get trigger level for scope

**Prototype** `double xPCScGetTriggerLevel(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScGetTriggerLevel` function returns the scope trigger level. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScGetTriggerLevel` function gets the trigger level for scope *scNum*. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScSetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScSetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScGetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScSetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScGetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScSetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerScope`, `xPCScSetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetTriggerMode`  
Scope object property `TriggerLevel`

**Purpose** Get trigger mode for scope

**Prototype** `int xPCScGetTriggerMode(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScGetTriggerMode` function returns the scope trigger mode. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScGetTriggerMode` function gets the trigger mode for scope *scNum*. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number. Use the constants defined in `xpcapiconst.h` to interpret the trigger mode. These constants include the following:

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGMD_FREERUN	0	There is no trigger mode. The scope always triggers when it is ready to trigger, regardless of the circumstances.
TRIGMD_SOFTWARE	1	Only a user can trigger the scope. It is always possible for a user to trigger the scope; however, if you set the scope to this trigger mode, user intervention is the only way to trigger the scope. No other triggering is possible.

# xPCScGetTriggerMode

---

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGMD_SIGNAL	2	Signal must cross a value before the scope is triggered.
TRIGMD_SCOPE	3	Scope is triggered by another scope at the trigger point of the triggering scope, modified by the value of triggerscopesample (see scopedata).

## See Also

API functions `xPCScSetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScGetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScSetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScGetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScSetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScGetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScSetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerScope`, `xPCScSetTriggerMode`

Scope object method `trigger`

Scope object property `TriggerMode`

<b>Purpose</b>	Get trigger scope				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCScGetTriggerScope(int <i>port</i>, int <i>scNum</i>);</code>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>port</i></td><td>Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code>.</td></tr><tr><td><i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .	<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .				
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCScGetTriggerScope</code> function returns a trigger scope. If there is an error, this function returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScGetTriggerScope</code> function gets the trigger scope for scope <i>scNum</i> . Use the <code>xPCGetScope</code> function to get the scope number.				
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCScSetTriggerLevel</code> , <code>xPCScGetTriggerLevel</code> , <code>xPCScSetTriggerSlope</code> , <code>xPCScGetTriggerSlope</code> , <code>xPCScSetTriggerSignal</code> , <code>xPCScGetTriggerSignal</code> , <code>xPCScSetTriggerMode</code> , <code>xPCScGetTriggerMode</code> Scope object property <code>TriggerScope</code>				

# xPCScGetTriggerScopeSample

---

**Purpose** Get sample number for triggering scope

**Prototype** `int xPCScGetTriggerScopeSample(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScGetTriggerScopeSample` function returns a nonnegative integer for a real sample, and -1 for the special case where triggering is at the end of the data acquisition cycle for a triggering scope. If there is an error, this function returns `INT_MIN` (-2147483647-1).

**Description** The `xPCScGetTriggerScopeSample` function gets the number of samples a triggering scope (*scNum*) acquires before starting data acquisition on a second scope. This value is a nonnegative integer for a real sample, and -1 for the special case where triggering is at the end of the data acquisition cycle for a triggering scope. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number for the trigger scope.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScSetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScGetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScSetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScGetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScSetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScGetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScSetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerScope`, `xPCScSetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetTriggerMode`, `xPCScSetTriggerScopeSample`

Scope object property `TriggerSample`



**Purpose** Get trigger signal for scope

**Prototype** `int xPCScGetTriggerSignal(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScGetTriggerSignal` function returns the scope trigger signal. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScGetTriggerSignal` function gets the trigger signal for scope *scNum*. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number for the trigger scope.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScSetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScGetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScSetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScGetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScSetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScSetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerScope`, `xPCScSetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetTriggerMode`

Scope object method `trigger`

Scope object property `TriggerSignal`

# xPCScGetTriggerSlope

---

**Purpose** Get trigger slope for scope

**Prototype** `int xPCScGetTriggerSlope(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScGetTriggerSlope` function returns the scope trigger slope. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScGetTriggerSlope` function gets the trigger slope of scope *scNum*. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number for the trigger scope. Use the constants defined in `xpcapiconst.h` to interpret the trigger slope. These constants have the following meanings:

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGSLOPE_EITHER	0	The trigger slope can be either rising or falling.
TRIGSLOPE_RISING	1	The trigger slope must be rising when the signal crosses the trigger value.
TRIGSLOPE_FALLING	2	The trigger slope must be falling when the signal crosses the trigger value.

## See Also

API functions xPCScSetTriggerLevel, xPCScGetTriggerLevel,  
xPCScSetTriggerSlope, xPCScSetTriggerSignal,  
xPCScGetTriggerSignal, xPCScSetTriggerScope,  
xPCScGetTriggerScope, xPCScSetTriggerMode, xPCScGetTriggerMode

Scope object method trigger

Scope object properties TriggerMode, TriggerSlope

# xPCScGetType

---

**Purpose** Get type of scope

**Prototype** `int xPCScGetType(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScGetType` function returns the scope type. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScGetType` function gets the type (`SCTYPE_HOST` for host, `SCTYPE_TARGET` for target, or `SCTYPE_FILE` for file) of scope *scNum*. Use the constants defined in `xpcapiconst.h` to interpret the return value. A scope of type `SCTYPE_HOST` is displayed on the host PC while a scope of type `SCTYPE_TARGET` is displayed on the target PC screen. A scope of type `SCTYPE_FILE` is stored on a storage medium. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCAddScope`, `xPCRemScope`  
Scope object property `Type`

**Purpose** Create new scope of type file

**Prototype** `long AddFileScope(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter a number for a new scope. Values are 1, 2, 3. . .

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.AddFileScope` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.AddFileScope` method creates a new scope of type file on the target PC.

Calling the `xPCScopes.AddFileScope` method with *scNum* having the number of an existing scope produces an error. Use `xPCScopes.GetScopes` to find the numbers of existing scopes.

# xPCScopes.AddHostScope

---

**Purpose** Create new scope of type host

**Prototype** `long AddHostScope(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter a number for a new scope. Values are 1, 2, 3. . .

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.AddHostScope` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.AddHostScope` method creates a new scope of type host on the target PC.

Calling the `xPCScopes.AddHostScope` method with *scNum* having the number of an existing scope produces an error. Use `xPCScopes.GetScopes` to find the numbers of existing scopes.

<b>Purpose</b>	Create new scope of type target		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long AddTargetScope(long <i>scNum</i>);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCScopes</code>		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><code>[in] <i>scNum</i></code></td><td>Enter a number for a new scope. Values are 1, 2, 3. . .</td></tr></table>	<code>[in] <i>scNum</i></code>	Enter a number for a new scope. Values are 1, 2, 3. . .
<code>[in] <i>scNum</i></code>	Enter a number for a new scope. Values are 1, 2, 3. . .		
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.AddTargetScope</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.		
<b>Description</b>	<p>If there is an error, this function returns 0. The <code>xPCScopes.AddTargetScope</code> method creates a new scope on the target PC.</p> <p>Calling the <code>xPCScopes.AddTargetScope</code> method with <i>scNum</i> having the number of an existing scope produces an error. Use <code>xPCScopes.GetScopes</code> to find the numbers of existing scopes.</p>		

# xPCScopes.GetScopes

---

**Purpose** Get and copy list of scope numbers

**Prototype** VARIANT GetScopes(long *size*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *size* Specify the size of the VARIANT array returned. This argument must be greater than MAX\_SCOPES-1. The elements in the array consist of a list of unsorted integers, terminated by -1.

**Return** The xPCScopes.GetScopes method returns a VARIANT array with elements containing a list of scope numbers from the target application.

**Description** The xPCScopes.GetScopes method gets a VARIANT array with elements containing a list of scope numbers currently defined for the target application. Specify the size of the VARIANT array returned. This size must be greater than the maximum number of scopes - 1, up to a maximum of 30 scopes. The elements in the array consist of a list of unsorted integers, terminated by -1.



<b>Purpose</b>	Get error string
<b>Prototype</b>	BSTR GetxPCError();
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCScopes
<b>Return</b>	The xPCScopes.GetxPCError method returns the string for the last reported error. If there is no error, this method returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCScopes.GetxPCError method gets the string of the last reported error by another COM API method. This value is reset every time you call a new method. Therefore, you should check this constant value immediately after a call to an API COM method. You can use this method in conjunction with the xPCScopes.isxPCError method, which detects that an error has occurred.
<b>See Also</b>	API function xPCScopes.isxPCError

# xPCScopes.Init

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Initialize scope object to communicate with target PC		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long Init(IXPCProtocol* xPCProtocol);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCScopes		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] xPCProtocol</td><td>Specify the communication port of the target PC object for which the scope is to be initialized.</td></tr></table>	[in] xPCProtocol	Specify the communication port of the target PC object for which the scope is to be initialized.
[in] xPCProtocol	Specify the communication port of the target PC object for which the scope is to be initialized.		
<b>Return</b>	If the xPCScopes.Init method initializes the scope object successfully, it returns 0. If the scope object fails to initialize, this method returns -1.		
<b>Description</b>	The xPCScopes.Init method initializes the scope object to communicate with the target PC referenced by the xPCProtocol object.		

<b>Purpose</b>	Get data acquisition status for scope		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long IsScopeFinished(long <i>scNum</i>);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.		
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the xPCScopes.IsScopeFinished method returns -1. If a scope finishes a data acquisition cycle, this method returns 1. If the scope is in the process of acquiring data, this method returns 0.		
<b>Description</b>	The xPCScopes.IsScopeFinished method gets a 1 or 0 depending on whether scope <i>scNum</i> is finished (state of SCST_FINISHED) or not. You can also call this function for scopes of type target; however, because target scopes restart immediately, it is almost impossible to find these scopes in the finished state.		

# xPCScopes.isxPCError

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Get error status
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long isxPCError();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.isxPCError</code> method returns the error status. If there is an error, this method returns 1. Upon success, this method returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCProtocol.isxPCError</code> method gets the error status. Use this method to check for any errors that might occur after a call to any of the <code>xPCScopes</code> class methods. If there is an error, call the <code>xPCScopes.GetxPCError</code> method to get the string for the error.
<b>See Also</b>	API function <code>xPCScopes.GetxPCError</code>

<b>Purpose</b>	Remove scope		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long RemScope(long scNum);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.		
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the xPCScopes.RemScope method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.		
<b>Description</b>	The xPCScopes.RemScope method removes the scope with number <i>scNum</i> . Attempting to remove a nonexistent scope causes an error. For a list of existing scopes, use xPCScopes.GetScopes.		

# xPCScopes.ScopeAddSignal

---

**Purpose** Add signal to scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeAddSignal(long scNum, long sigNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCScopes

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>sigNum</i>	Enter a signal number.

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.ScopeAddSignal` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeAddSignal` method adds the signal with number *sigNum* to the scope *scNum*. The signal should not already exist in the scope. You can use `xPCScopes.ScopeGetSignals` to get a list of the signals already present. Use the `xPCTarget.GetSignalIdx` method to get the signal number.

**Purpose** Copy scope data to array

**Prototype** VARIANT ScopeGetData(long *scNum*, long *signal\_id*, long *start*, long *numsamples*, long *decimation*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>signal_id</i>	Enter a signal number.
[in] <i>start</i>	Enter the first sample from which data retrieval is to start.
[in] <i>numsamples</i>	Enter the number of samples retrieved with a decimation of <i>decimation</i> , starting from the <i>start</i> value.
[in] <i>decimation</i>	Enter a value such that every <i>decimation</i> sample is retrieved in a scope window.

**Return** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetData method returns a VARIANT array with elements containing the data used in a scope.

**Description** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetData method gets the data used in a scope. Use this function for scopes of type SCTYPE\_HOST. The scope must be either in state Finished or in state Interrupted for the data to be retrievable. (Use the xPCScopes.ScopeGetState method to check the state of the scope.) The data must be retrieved one signal at a time. The calling function determines and allocates the space ahead of time to store the scope data. Use the method xPCScopes.ScopeGetSignals to get the list of signals in the scope for *signal\_id*.

# xPCScopes.ScopeGetDecimation

---

**Purpose** Get decimation of scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeGetDecimation(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetDecimation` method returns the decimation of scope *scNum*. If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetDecimation` method gets the decimation of scope *scNum*. The decimation is a number, N, meaning every Nth sample is acquired in a scope window.



# xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumPrePostSamples

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Get number of pre- or posttriggering samples before triggering scope		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long ScopeGetNumPrePostSamples(long scNum);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.		
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumPrePostSamples</code> method returns the number of samples for pre- or posttriggering for scope <i>scNum</i> . If an error occurs, this method returns -1.		
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumPrePostSamples</code> method gets the number of samples for pre- or posttriggering for scope <i>scNum</i> . A negative number implies pretriggering, whereas a positive number implies posttriggering samples.		

# xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumSamples

---

**Purpose** Get number of samples in one data acquisition cycle

**Prototype** `long ScopeGetNumSamples(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumSamples` method returns the number of samples in the scope *scNum*. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumSamples` method gets the number of samples in one data acquisition cycle for scope *scNum*.

**Purpose** Get list of signals

**Prototype** VARIANT ScopeGetSignals(long *scNum*, long *size*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>size</i>	Enter an integer to allocate the number of elements to be returned in the VARIANT array. This size is required for the method to copy the list of signals into the VARIANT array. The maximum number of signals is 10.

**Return** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetSignals method returns a VARIANT array with elements consisting of the list of signals defined for a scope.

**Description** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetSignals method gets the list of signals defined for scope *scNum*. You can use the constant MAX\_SIGNALS.

# xPCScopes.ScopeGetStartTime

---

**Purpose** Get last data acquisition cycle start time

**Prototype** `double ScopeGetStartTime(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetStartTime` method returns the start time for the last data acquisition cycle of a scope. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetStartTime` method gets the time at which the last data acquisition cycle for scope *scNum* started. This is only valid for scopes of type `SCTYPE_HOST`.

**Purpose** Get state of scope

**Prototype** `BSTR ScopeGetState(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetState` method returns the state of scope *scNum*. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetState` method gets the state of scope *scNum*, or -1 upon error.

Constants to find the scope state have the following meanings:

Constant	Value	Description
SCST_WAITTOSTART	0	Scope is ready and waiting to start.
SCST_PREACQUIRING	5	Scope acquires a predefined number of samples before triggering.
SCST_WAITFORTRIG	1	After a scope is finished with the preacquiring state, it waits for a trigger. If the scope does not preacquire data, it enters the wait for trigger state.
SCST_ACQUIRING	2	Scope is acquiring data. The scope enters this state when it leaves the wait for trigger state.

## xPCScopes.ScopeGetState

---

Constant	Value	Description
SCST_FINISHED	3	Scope is finished acquiring data when it has attained the predefined limit.
SCST_INTERRUPTED	4	The user has stopped (interrupted) the scope.

# xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerLevel

---

**Purpose** Get trigger level for scope

**Prototype** `double ScopeGetTriggerLevel(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerLevel method returns the scope trigger level. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerLevel method gets the trigger level for scope *scNum*.

# xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerMode

---

**Purpose** Get trigger mode for scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeGetTriggerMode(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerMode` method returns the scope trigger mode. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerMode` method gets the trigger mode for scope *scNum*. Use the constants here to interpret the trigger mode:

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGMD_FREERUN	0	There is no trigger mode. The scope always triggers when it is ready to trigger, regardless of the circumstances.
TRIGMD_SOFTWARE	1	Only a user can trigger the scope. It is always possible for a user to trigger the scope; however, if you set the scope to this trigger mode, user intervention is the only way to trigger the scope. No other triggering is possible.



## xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerMode

---

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGMD_SIGNAL	2	Signal must cross a value before the scope is triggered.
TRIGMD_SCOPE	3	Scope is triggered by another scope at the trigger point of the triggering scope, modified by the value of triggerscopesample (see scopedata).

### See Also

API function `xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerModeStr`

# xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerModeStr

---

**Purpose** Get trigger mode as string

**Prototype** `BSTR ScopeGetTriggerModeStr(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerModeStr` method returns a string containing the trigger mode string.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerModeStr` method gets the trigger mode string for scope *scNum*. This method returns one of the following strings.

Constant	Description
FreeRun	There is no trigger mode. The scope always triggers when it is ready to trigger, regardless of the circumstances.
Software	Only a user can trigger the scope. It is always possible for a user to trigger the scope; however, if you set the scope to this trigger mode, user intervention is the only way to trigger the scope. No other triggering is possible.
Signal	Signal must cross a value before the scope is triggered.
Scope	Scope is triggered by another scope at the trigger point of the triggering scope, modified by the value of <code>triggerscopesample</code> (see <code>scopedata</code> ).

**See Also** API function `xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerMode`

<b>Purpose</b>	Get sample number for triggering scope		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long ScopeGetTriggerSample(long <i>scNum</i>);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.		
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSample</code> method returns a nonnegative integer for a real sample, and -1 for the special case where triggering is at the end of the data acquisition cycle for a triggering scope. If there is an error, this method returns -1.		
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSample</code> method gets the number of samples a triggering scope ( <i>scNum</i> ) acquires before starting data acquisition on a second scope. This value is a nonnegative integer for a real sample, and -1 for the special case where triggering is at the end of the data acquisition cycle for a triggering scope.		

# xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSignal

---

**Purpose** Get trigger signal for scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeGetTriggerSignal(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSignal method returns the scope trigger signal. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSignal method gets the trigger signal for scope *scNum*.

**Purpose** Get trigger slope for scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeGetTriggerSlope(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlope` method returns the scope trigger slope. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlope` method gets the trigger slope of scope *scNum*. Use the constants here to interpret the trigger slope:

String	Value	Description
TRIGSLOPE_EITHER	0	The trigger slope can be either rising or falling.
TRIGSLOPE_RISING	1	The trigger slope must be rising when the signal crosses the trigger value.
TRIGSLOPE_FALLING	2	The trigger slope must be falling when the signal crosses the trigger value.

**See Also** API function `xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlopeStr`

# xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlopeStr

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Get trigger slope as string
<b>Prototype</b>	BSTR ScopeGetTriggerSlopeStr(long <i>scNum</i> );
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes
<b>Arguments</b>	[in] <i>scNum</i> Enter the scope number.
<b>Return</b>	The xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlopeStr method returns a string containing the trigger slope string.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlopeStr method gets the trigger slope string for scope <i>scNum</i> . This method returns one of the following strings:
<b>See Also</b>	API function xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlope

**Purpose** Get type of scope

**Prototype** BSTR ScopeGetType(long *scNum*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetType method returns the scope type as a string. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The xPCScopes.ScopeGetType method gets the type of scope *scNum*. This method returns one of the following strings:

String	Description
HOST	Scope of type host
Target	Scope of type target

# xPCScopes.ScopeRemSignal

---

**Purpose** Remove signal from scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeRemSignal(long scNum, long sigNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

[in] *sigNum* Enter a signal number.

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.ScopeRemSignal` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeRemSignal` method removes a signal from the scope with number *scNum*. The scope must already exist, and signal number *sigNum* must exist in the scope. Use `xPCScopes.GetScopes` to determine the existing scopes, and use `xPCScopes.ScopeGetSignals` to determine the existing signals for a scope. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScopes.ScopeGetState` to check the state of the scope.



<b>Purpose</b>	Set decimation of scope				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long ScopeSetDecimation(long <i>scNum</i>, long <i>decimation</i>);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>decimation</i></td><td>Enter an integer for the decimation.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.	[in] <i>decimation</i>	Enter an integer for the decimation.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
[in] <i>decimation</i>	Enter an integer for the decimation.				
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetDecimation</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetDecimation</code> method sets the <i>decimation</i> of scope <i>scNum</i> . The decimation is a number, N, meaning every Nth sample is acquired in a scope window. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetState</code> to check the state of the scope.				

# xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumPrePostSamples

---

**Purpose** Set number of pre- or posttriggering samples before triggering scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeSetNumPrePostSamples(long scNum, long prepost);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>prepost</i>	A negative number means pretriggering, while a positive number means posttriggering. This function can only be used when the scope is stopped.

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumPrePostSamples` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumPrePostSamples` method sets the number of samples for pre- or posttriggering for scope *scNum* to *prepost*. Use this method only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScopes.ScopeGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCScopes.GetScopes` method to get a list of scope numbers.

# xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumSamples

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Set number of samples in one data acquisition cycle				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long ScopeSetNumSamples(long <i>scNum</i>, long <i>samples</i>);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>samples</i></td><td>Enter the number of samples you want to acquire in one cycle.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.	[in] <i>samples</i>	Enter the number of samples you want to acquire in one cycle.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
[in] <i>samples</i>	Enter the number of samples you want to acquire in one cycle.				
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumSamples</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumSamples</code> method sets the number of samples for scope <i>scNum</i> to <i>samples</i> . Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetState</code> to check the state of the scope.				

# xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerLevel

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Set trigger level for scope				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long ScopeSetTriggerLevel(long <i>scNum</i>, double <i>level</i>);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>level</i></td><td>Value for a signal to trigger data acquisition with a scope.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.	[in] <i>level</i>	Value for a signal to trigger data acquisition with a scope.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
[in] <i>level</i>	Value for a signal to trigger data acquisition with a scope.				
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerLevel</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerLevel</code> method sets the trigger level <i>level</i> for scope <i>scNum</i> . Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetState</code> to check the state of the scope.				

# xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerMode

**Purpose** Set trigger mode of scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeSetTriggerMode(long scNum, long triggermode);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>triggermode</i>	Trigger mode for a scope.

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerMode` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerMode` method sets the trigger mode of scope *scNum* to *triggermode*. Use this method only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScopes.ScopeGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCScopes.GetScopes` method to get a list of scopes.

Use the constants defined here to interpret the trigger mode:

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGMD_FREERUN	0	The scope always triggers when it is ready to trigger, regardless of the circumstances. This is the default.

## xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerMode

---

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGMD_SOFTWARE	1	Only a user can trigger the scope. It is always possible for a user to trigger the scope; however, if you set the scope to this trigger mode, user intervention is the only way to trigger the scope. No other triggering is possible.
TRIGMD_SIGNAL	2	Signal must cross a value before the scope is triggered.
TRIGMD_SCOPE	3	Scope is triggered by another scope at the trigger point of the triggering scope, modified by the value of <code>triggerscopesample</code> (see <code>scopedata</code> ).

<b>Purpose</b>	Set sample number for triggering scope				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long ScopeSetTriggerSample(long scNum, long trigScSample);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>trigScSample</i></td><td>Enter a nonnegative integer for the number of samples acquired by the triggering scope before starting data acquisition on a second scope.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.	[in] <i>trigScSample</i>	Enter a nonnegative integer for the number of samples acquired by the triggering scope before starting data acquisition on a second scope.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
[in] <i>trigScSample</i>	Enter a nonnegative integer for the number of samples acquired by the triggering scope before starting data acquisition on a second scope.				
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSample</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSample</code> method sets the number of samples (<i>trigScSample</i>) a triggering scope acquires before it triggers a second scope (<i>scNum</i>). Use the <code>xPCScopes.GetScopes</code> method to get a list of scopes.</p> <p>For meaningful results, set <i>trigScSample</i> between -1 and (<i>nSamp</i>-1). <i>nSamp</i> is the number of samples in one data acquisition cycle for the triggering scope. However, no checking is done, and using a value that is too big causes the scope never to be triggered.</p> <p>If you want to trigger a second scope at the end of a data acquisition cycle for the triggering scope, use a value of -1 for <i>trigScSamp</i>.</p>				

# xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSignal

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Select signal to trigger scope				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long ScopeSetTriggerSignal(long scNum, long triggerSignal);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>triggerSignal</i></td><td>Enter a signal number.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.	[in] <i>triggerSignal</i>	Enter a signal number.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
[in] <i>triggerSignal</i>	Enter a signal number.				
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSignal</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSignal</code> method sets the trigger signal of scope <i>scNum</i> to <i>trigSig</i> . The trigger signal <i>trigSig</i> must be one of the signals in the scope. Use this method only when the scope is stopped. You can use <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetSignals</code> to get the list of signals in the scope. Use <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetState</code> to check the state of the scope. Use the <code>xPCScopes.GetScopes</code> method to get a list of scopes.				



**Purpose** Set slope of signal that triggers scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeSetTriggerSlope(long scNum, long triggerslope);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>triggerslope</i>	Enter the slope mode for the signal that triggers the scope.

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSlope` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSlope` method sets the trigger slope of scope *scNum* to *trigSlope*. Use this method only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScopes.ScopeGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCScopes.GetScopes` method to get a list of scopes.

Use the constants defined here to set the trigger slope:

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGSLOPE_EITHER	0	The trigger slope can be either rising or falling.
TRIGSLOPE_RISING	1	The trigger signal value must be rising when it crosses the trigger value.
TRIGSLOPE_FALLING	2	The trigger signal value must be falling when it crosses the trigger value.

# xPCScopes.ScopeSoftwareTrigger

---

**Purpose** Set software trigger of scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeSoftwareTrigger(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.ScopeSoftwareTrigger` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeSoftwareTrigger` method triggers scope *scNum*. The scope must be in the state `Waiting for trigger` for this method to succeed. Use `xPCScopes.ScopeGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCScopes.GetScopes` method to get a list of scopes.

You can use the `xPCScopes.ScopeSoftwareTrigger` method to trigger the scope, regardless of the trigger mode.

<b>Purpose</b>	Start data acquisition for scope		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long ScopeStart(long scNum);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.		
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.ScopeStart</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.		
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.ScopeStart</code> method starts or restarts the data acquisition of scope <i>scNum</i> . If the scope does not have to preacquire any samples, it enters the <code>Waiting for Trigger</code> state. The scope must be in state <code>Waiting to Start</code> , <code>Finished</code> , or <code>Interrupted</code> for this function to succeed. Call <code>xPCScopes.ScopeGetState</code> to check the state of the scope or, for host scopes that are already started, call <code>xPCScopes.IsScopeFinished</code> . Use the <code>xPCScopes.GetScopes</code> method to get a list of scopes.		

# xPCScopes.ScopeStop

---

**Purpose** Stop data acquisition for scope

**Prototype** `long ScopeStop(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.ScopeStop` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.ScopeStop` method stops the scope *scNum*. This sets the scope to the Interrupted state. The scope must be running for this function to succeed. Use `xPCScopes.ScopeGetState` to determine the state of the scope. Use the `xPCScopes.GetScopes` method to get a list of scopes.

<b>Purpose</b>	Get status of grid line for particular scope		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long TargetScopeGetGrid(long scNum);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.		
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetGrid</code> method returns the state of the grid lines for scope <i>scNum</i> . If there is an error, this method returns -1.		
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetGrid</code> method gets the state of the grid lines for scope <i>scNum</i> (which must be of type <code>SCTYPE_TARGET</code> ). A return value of 1 implies grid on, while 0 implies grid off. Note that when the scope mode (as set or retrieved by <code>xPCGetScopes/xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetMode</code> ) is set to <code>SCMODE_NUMERICAL</code> , the grid is not drawn even when the grid mode is set to 1. Use the <code>xPCScopes.GetScopes</code> method to get a list of scopes.		

# xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetMode

---

**Purpose** Get scope mode for displaying signals

**Prototype** `long TargetScopeGetMode(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetMode` method returns the value corresponding to the scope mode. The possible values are

- `SCMODE_NUMERICAL = 0`
- `SCMODE_REDRAW = 1`
- `SCMODE_SLIDING = 2`
- `SCMODE_ROLLING = 3`

If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetMode` method gets the mode of the scope *scNum*, which must be of type `SCTYPE_TARGET`. Use the `xPCScopes.GetScopes` method to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API function `xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetModeStr`

**Purpose** Get scope mode string for displaying signals

**Prototype** `BSTR TargetScopeGetModeStr(long scNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments** [in] *scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetModeStr` method returns the string corresponding to the scope mode. The possible strings are

- Numerical
- Redraw
- Sliding
- Rolling

**Description** The `xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetModeStr` method gets the mode string of the scope *scNum*, which must be of type `SCTYPE_TARGET`. Use the `xPCScopes.GetScopes` method to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API function `xPCGetScopes`

# xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetViewMode

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Get view mode for target PC display
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long TargetScopeGetViewMode();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetViewMode</code> method returns the view mode for the target PC screen. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetViewMode</code> method gets the view (zoom) mode for the target PC display. If the returned value is not zero, the number is of the scope currently displayed on the screen. If the value is 0, then all defined scopes are currently displayed on the target PC screen. In the latter case, no scopes are in focus (that is, all scopes are unzoomed).



<b>Purpose</b>	Get <i>y</i> -axis limits for scope
<b>Prototype</b>	VARIANT TargetScopeGetYLimits(long <i>scNum</i> );
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes
<b>Arguments</b>	[in] <i>scNum</i> Enter the scope number.
<b>Return</b>	The xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetYLimits method returns the upper and lower limits for scopes of type target.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetYLimits method gets and copies the upper and lower limits for a scope of type SCTYPE_TARGET and with scope number <i>scNum</i> . If both elements are zero, the limits are autoscaled. Use the xPCScopes.GetScopes method to get a list of scopes.

# xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetGrid

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Set grid mode for scope				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long TargetScopeSetGrid(long <i>scNum</i>, long <i>gridonoff</i>);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>gridonoff</i></td><td>Enter a grid value (0 or 1).</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.	[in] <i>gridonoff</i>	Enter a grid value (0 or 1).
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
[in] <i>gridonoff</i>	Enter a grid value (0 or 1).				
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetGrid</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetGrid</code> method sets the grid of a scope of type <code>SCTYPE_TARGET</code> and scope number <i>scNum</i> to <i>gridonoff</i> . If <i>gridonoff</i> is 0, the grid is off. If <i>gridonoff</i> is 1, the grid is on and grid lines are drawn on the scope window. When the drawing mode of scope <i>scNum</i> is set to <code>SCMODE_NUMERICAL</code> , the grid is not drawn even when the grid mode is set to 1. Use the <code>xPCScopes.GetScopes</code> method to get a list of scopes.				

**Purpose** Set display mode for scope

**Prototype** `long TargetScopeSetMode(long scNum, long mode);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes

**Arguments**

[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
in] <i>mode</i>	Enter the value for the mode.

**Return** If there is an error, the `xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetMode` method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetMode` method sets the mode of a scope of type `SCTYPE_TARGET` and scope number *scNum* to *mode*. You can use one of the following constants for *mode*:

- `SCMODE_NUMERICAL = 0`
- `SCMODE_REDRAW = 1`
- `SCMODE_SLIDING = 2`
- `SCMODE_ROLLING = 3`

Use the `xPCScopes.GetScopes` method to get a list of scopes.

# xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetViewMode

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Set view mode for scope		
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long TargetScopeSetViewMode(long <i>scNum</i>);</code>		
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes		
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.		
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetViewMode</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.		
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetViewMode</code> method sets the target PC screen to display one scope with scope number <i>scNum</i> . If you set <i>scNum</i> to 0, the target PC screen displays all the scopes. Use the <code>xPCScopes.GetScopes</code> method to get a list of scopes.		

<b>Purpose</b>	Set <i>y</i> -axis limits for scope				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long TargetScopeSetYLimits(long <i>scNum</i>, SAFEARRAY(double)* <i>YLimitarray</i>);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCScopes				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr><tr><td>[in, out] <i>YLimitarray</i></td><td>Enter a two-element array.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.	[in, out] <i>YLimitarray</i>	Enter a two-element array.
[in] <i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
[in, out] <i>YLimitarray</i>	Enter a two-element array.				
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetYLimits</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetYLimits</code> method sets the <i>y</i> -axis limits for a scope with scope number <i>scNum</i> and type <code>SCTYPE_TARGET</code> to the values in the double array <i>YLimitArray</i> . The first element is the lower limit, and the second element is the upper limit. Set both limits to 0.0 to specify autoscaling. Use the <code>xPCScopes.GetScopes</code> method to get a list of scopes.				

# xPCScRemSignal

---

**Purpose** Remove signal from scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScRemSignal(int port, int scNum, int sigNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>sigNum</i>	Enter a signal number.

**Description** The `xPCScRemSignal` function removes a signal from the scope with number *scNum*. The scope must already exist, and signal number *sigNum* must exist in the scope. Use `xPCGetScopes` to determine the existing scopes, and use `xPCScGetSignals` to determine the existing signals for a scope. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScAddSignal`, `xPCAddScope`, `xPCRemScope`, `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCScGetSignals`, `xPCScGetState`  
Scope object method `remsignal`

**Purpose** Set decimation of scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScSetDecimation(int port, int scNum, int decimation);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>decimation</i>	Enter an integer for the decimation.

**Description** The `xPCScSetDecimation` function sets the *decimation* of scope *scNum*. The decimation is a number, N, meaning every Nth sample is acquired in a scope window. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScGetDecimation`, `xPCScGetState`  
Scope object property Decimation

# xPCScSetNumPrePostSamples

---

**Purpose** Set number of pre- or posttriggering samples before triggering scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScSetNumPrePostSamples(int port, int scNum, int prepost);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>prepost</i>	A negative number means pretriggering, while a positive number means posttriggering. This function can only be used when the scope is stopped.

**Description** The `xPCScSetNumPrePostSamples` function sets the number of samples for pre- or posttriggering for scope *scNum* to *prepost*. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScGetNumPrePostSamples`, `xPCScGetState`  
Scope object property `NumPrePostSamples`



**Purpose** Set number of samples in one data acquisition cycle

**Prototype** `void xPCScSetNumSamples(int port, int scNum, int samples);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>samples</i>	Enter the number of samples you want to acquire in one cycle.

**Description** The `xPCScSetNumSamples` function sets the number of samples for scope *scNum* to *samples*. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScGetNumSamples`, `xPCScGetState`  
Scope object property `NumSamples`

# xPCScSetTriggerLevel

---

**Purpose** Set trigger level for scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScSetTriggerLevel(int port, int scNum, double level);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>level</i>	Value for a signal to trigger data acquisition with a scope.

**Description** The `xPCScSetTriggerLevel` function sets the trigger level *level* for scope *scNum*. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScope` function to get the scope number for the trigger scope.

**See Also** API functions `xPCScGetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScSetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScGetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScSetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScGetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScSetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerScope`, `xPCScSetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetState`

Scope object property `TriggerLevel`

**Purpose** Set trigger mode of scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScSetTriggerMode(int port, int scNum, int mode);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>mode</i>	Trigger mode for a scope.

**Description** The `xPCScSetTriggerMode` function sets the trigger mode of scope *scNum* to *mode*. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

Use the constants defined in `xpcapiconst.h` to interpret the trigger mode:

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGMD_FREERUN	0	The scope always triggers when it is ready to trigger, regardless of the circumstances. This is the default.
TRIGMD_SOFTWARE	1	Only a user can trigger the scope. It is always possible for a user to trigger the scope; however, if you set the scope to this trigger mode, user intervention is the only way to trigger the scope. No other triggering is possible.

# xPCScSetTriggerMode

---

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGMD_SIGNAL	2	Signal must cross a value before the scope is triggered.
TRIGMD_SCOPE	3	Scope is triggered by another scope at the trigger point of the triggering scope, modified by the value of <code>triggerscopesample</code> (see <code>scopedata</code> ).

## See Also

API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCScSetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScGetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScSetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScGetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScSetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScGetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScSetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetState`

Scope object method `trigger`

Scope object property `TriggerMode`

**Purpose**

Select scope to trigger another scope

**Prototype**

```
void xPCScSetTriggerScope(int port, int scNum,  
int trigScope);
```

**Arguments**

*port* Enter the value returned by either the function xPCOpenSerialPort or the function xPCOpenTcpIpPort.

*scNum* Enter the scope number.

*trigScope* Enter the scope type to be triggered.

**Description**

The xPCScSetTriggerScope function sets the trigger scope of scope *scNum* to *trigScope*. This function can only be used when the scope is stopped. Use xPCScGetState to check the state of the scope. Use the xPCGetScopes function to get a list of scopes.

The scope type can be SCTYPE\_HOST or SCTYPE\_TARGET.

**See Also**

API functions xPCGetScopes, xPCScSetTriggerLevel, xPCScGetTriggerLevel, xPCScSetTriggerSlope, xPCScGetTriggerSlope, xPCScSetTriggerSignal, xPCScGetTriggerSignal, xPCScGetTriggerScope, xPCScSetTriggerMode, xPCScGetTriggerMode, xPCScGetState

Scope object property TriggerScope

# xPCScSetTriggerScopeSample

---

**Purpose** Set sample number for triggering scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScSetTriggerScopeSample(int port, int scNum, int trigScSamp);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>trigScSamp</i>	Enter a nonnegative integer for the number of samples acquired by the triggering scope before starting data acquisition on a second scope.

**Description** The `xPCScSetTriggerScopeSample` function sets the number of samples (*trigScSamp*) a triggering scope acquires before it triggers a second scope (*scNum*). Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

For meaningful results, set *trigScSamp* between -1 and (*nSamp*-1). *nSamp* is the number of samples in one data acquisition cycle for the triggering scope. However, no checking is done, and using a value that is too big causes the scope never to be triggered.

If you want to trigger a second scope at the end of a data acquisition cycle for the triggering scope, enter a value of -1 for *trigScSamp*.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCScSetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScGetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScSetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScGetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScSetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScGetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScSetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerScope`, `xPCScSetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetTriggerScopeSample`  
Scope object properties `TriggerMode`, `TriggerSample`

**Purpose** Select signal to trigger scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScSetTriggerSignal(int port, int scNum, int trigSig);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>trigSig</i>	Enter a signal number.

**Description** The `xPCScSetTriggerSignal` function sets the trigger signal of scope *scNum* to *trigSig*. The trigger signal *trigSig* must be one of the signals in the scope. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. You can use `xPCScGetSignals` to get the list of signals in the scope. Use `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCScGetState`, `xPCScSetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScGetTriggerLevel`, `xPCScSetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScGetTriggerSlope`, `xPCScGetTriggerSignal`, `xPCScSetTriggerScope`, `xPCScGetTriggerScope`, `xPCScSetTriggerMode`, `xPCScGetTriggerMode`

Scope object property `TriggerSignal`

# xPCScSetTriggerSlope

---

**Purpose** Set slope of signal that triggers scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScSetTriggerSlope(int port, int scNum, int trigSlope);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>trigSlope</i>	Enter the slope mode for the signal that triggers the scope.

**Description** The `xPCScSetTriggerSlope` function sets the trigger slope of scope *scNum* to *trigSlope*. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

Use the constants defined in `xpcapiconst.h` to set the trigger slope:

Constant	Value	Description
TRIGSLOPE_EITHER	0	The trigger slope can be either rising or falling.
TRIGSLOPE_RISING	1	The trigger signal value must be rising when it crosses the trigger value.
TRIGSLOPE_FALLING	2	The trigger signal value must be falling when it crosses the trigger value.



### See Also

API functions xPCGetScopes, xPCScSetTriggerLevel, xPCScGetTriggerLevel, xPCScGetTriggerSlope, xPCScSetTriggerSignal, xPCScGetTriggerSignal, xPCScSetTriggerScope, xPCScGetTriggerScope, xPCScSetTriggerMode, xPCScGetTriggerMode, xPCScGetState

Scope object property TriggerSlope

# xPCScSoftwareTrigger

---

**Purpose** Set software trigger of scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScSoftwareTrigger(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Description** The `xPCScSoftwareTrigger` function triggers scope *scNum*. The scope must be in the state `Waiting for trigger` for this function to succeed. Use `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

You can use the `xPCScSoftwareTrigger` function to trigger the scope, regardless of the trigger mode.

**See Also**

- API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCScGetState`, `xPCIsScFinished`
- Scope object method `trigger`
- Scope object property `TriggerMode`

**Purpose** Start data acquisition for scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScStart(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Description** The `xPCScStart` function starts or restarts the data acquisition of scope *scNum*. If the scope does not have to preacquire any samples, it enters the `Waiting for Trigger` state. The scope must be in state `Waiting` to `Start`, `Finished`, or `Interrupted` for this function to succeed. Call `xPCScGetState` to check the state of the scope or, for host scopes that are already started, call `xPCIsScFinished`. Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCScGetState`, `xPCScStop`, `xPCIsScFinished`  
Scope object method `start` (scope object)

# xPCScStop

---

**Purpose** Stop data acquisition for scope

**Prototype** `void xPCScStop(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

*port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

*scNum* Enter the scope number.

**Description** The `xPCScStop` function stops the scope *scNum*. This sets the scope to the "Interrupted" state. The scope must be running for this function to succeed. Use `xPCScGetState` to determine the state of the scope. Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCScStart`, `xPCScGetState`  
Scope object method `stop` (scope object)

**Purpose** Turn message display on or off

**Prototype** `void xPCSetEcho(int port, int mode);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>mode</i>	Valid values are
0	Turns the display off
1	Turns the display on

**Description** On the target PC screen, the `xPCSetEcho` function sets the message display on the target PC on or off. You can change the mode only when the target application is stopped. When you turn the message display off, the message screen no longer updates.

**See Also** API function `xPCGetEcho`

# xPCSetLastError

---

**Purpose** Set last error to specific string constant

**Prototype** `void xPCSetLastError(int error);`

**Arguments** *error* Specify the string constant for the error.

**Description** The xPCSetLastError function sets the global error constant returned by xPCGetLastError to *error*. This is useful only to set the string constant to ENOERR to indicate no error was found.

**See Also** API functions xPCGetLastError, xPCErrorMsg

**Purpose** Change initialization timeout value between host PC and target PC

**Prototype** `void xPCSetLoadTimeOut(int port, int timeOut);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>timeOut</i>	Enter the new communication timeout value.

**Description** The `xPCSetLoadTimeOut` function changes the timeout value for communication between the host PC and target PC. The *timeOut* value is the time an xPC Target™ API function waits for the communication between the host PC and target PC to complete before returning. It enables you to set the number of communication attempts to be made before signaling a timeout.

For example, the function `xPCLoadApp` waits to check whether the model initialization for a new application is complete before returning. When a new target application is loaded onto the target PC, the function `xPCLoadApp` waits for a certain time to check whether the model initialization is complete before returning. If the model initialization is incomplete within the allotted time, `xPCLoadApp` returns a timeout error.

By default, `xPCLoadApp` checks for target readiness for up to 5 seconds. However, in the case of larger models or models requiring longer initialization (for example, models with thermocouple boards), the default of about 5 seconds might be insufficient and a spurious timeout can be generated. Other functions that communicate with the target PC will wait for *timeOut* seconds before declaring a timeout event.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetLoadTimeOut`, `xPCLoadApp`, `xPCUnloadApp`

# xPCSetLogMode

---

**Purpose** Set logging mode and increment value of scope

**Prototype** `void xPCSetLogMode(int port, lgmode logging_data);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>logging_data</i>	Logging mode and increment value.

**Description** The `xPCSetLogMode` function sets the logging mode and increment to the values set in *logging\_data*. See the structure `lgmode` for more details.

**See Also**

- API function `xPCGetLogMode`
- API structure `lgmode`
- Target object property `LogMode`



**Purpose** Change value of parameter

**Prototype** `void xPCSetParam(int port, int paramIdx, const double *paramValue);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>paramIdx</i>	Parameter index.
<i>paramValue</i>	Vector with at least the correct size.

**Description** The `xPCSetParam` function sets the parameter *paramIdx* to the value in *paramValue*. For matrices, *paramValue* should be a vector representation of the matrix in column-major format. Although *paramValue* is a vector of doubles, the function converts the values to the correct types (using truncation) before setting them.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetParamDims`, `xPCGetParamIdx`, `xPCGetParam`

# xPCSetSampleTime

---

**Purpose** Change target application sample time

**Prototype** `void xPCSetSampleTime(int port, double ts);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>ts</i>	Sample time for the target application.

**Description** The `xPCSetSampleTime` function sets the sample time, in seconds, of the target application to *ts*. Use this function only when the application is stopped.

**See Also** API function `xPCGetSampleTime`  
Target object property `SampleTime`

**Purpose** Set properties of scope

**Prototype** `void xPCSetScope(int port, scopedata state);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>state</i>	Enter a structure of type <code>scopedata</code> .

**Description** The `xPCSetScope` function sets the properties of a scope using a *state* structure of type `scopedata`. Ensure that this structure contains the properties you want to set for the scope. You can set several properties at the same time. For convenience, call the function `xPCGetScope` first to populate the structure with the current values. You can then change the desired values. Use this function only when the scope is stopped. Use `xPCScGetState` to determine the state of the scope.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetScope`, `xPCScGetState`, `scopedata`  
Scope object method `set (scope object)`

# xPCSetStopTime

---

**Purpose** Change target application stop time

**Prototype** `void xPCSetStopTime(int port, double tfinal);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>tfinal</i>	Enter the stop time, in seconds.

**Description** The `xPCSetStopTime` function sets the stop time of the target application to the value in *tfinal*. The target application will run for this number of seconds before stopping. Set *tfinal* to `-1.0` to set the stop time to infinity.

**See Also** API function `xPCGetStopTime`  
Target object property `StopTime`

**Purpose** Start target application

**Prototype** `void xPCStartApp(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Description** The `xPCStartApp` function starts the target application loaded on the target machine.

**See Also** API function `xPCStopApp`  
Target object method `start` (target application object)

# xPCStopApp

---

**Purpose** Stop target application

**Prototype** `void xPCStopApp(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Description** The `xPCStopApp` function stops the target application loaded on the target PC. The target application remains loaded, and all parameter changes made remain intact. If you want to stop and unload an application, use `xPCUnloadApp`.

**See Also** API functions `xPCStartApp`, `xPCUnloadApp`  
Target object method `stop` (target application object)

<b>Purpose</b>	Get average task execution time
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>double AverageTET();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.AverageTET</code> method returns the average task execution time (TET) for the target application. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.AverageTET</code> method gets the TET for the target application. You can use this function when the target application is running or when it is stopped.

# xPCTarget.GetAppName

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Get target application name
<b>Prototype</b>	BSTR GetAppName();
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The xPCTarget.GetAppName method returns a string with the name of the target application.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCTarget.GetAppName method gets the name of the target application. You can use the return value, <i>model_name</i> , in a printf or similar statement. In case of error, the string is unchanged. Be sure to allocate enough space to accommodate the longest target name you have.



<b>Purpose</b>	Get execution time for target application
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>double GetExecTime();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget</code>
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetExecTime</code> method returns the current execution time for a target application. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetExecTime</code> method gets the current execution time for the running target application. If the target application is stopped, the value is the last running time when the target application was stopped. If the target application is running, the value is the current running time.

# xPCTarget.GetNumOutputs

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Get number of outputs
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long GetNumOutputs();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetNumOutputs</code> method returns the number of outputs in the current target application. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetNumOutputs</code> method gets the number of outputs in the target application. The number of outputs equals the sum of the input signal widths of all output blocks at the root level of the Simulink® model.

<b>Purpose</b>	Get number of tunable parameters
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long GetNumParams();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget</code>
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetNumParams</code> method returns the number of tunable parameters in the target application. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetNumParams</code> method gets the number of tunable parameters in the target application. Use this method to see how many parameters you can get or modify.

## xPCTarget.GetNumSignals

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Get number of signals
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long GetNumSignals();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetNumSignals</code> method returns the number of signals in the target application. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetNumSignals</code> method gets the total number of signals in the target application that can be monitored from the host. Use this method to see how many signals you can monitor.

<b>Purpose</b>	Get number of states
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long GetNumStates();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget</code>
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetNumStates</code> method returns the number of states in the target application. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetNumStates</code> method gets the number of states in the target application.

# xPCTarget.GetOutputLog

---

**Purpose** Copy output log data to array

**Prototype** VARIANT GetOutputLog(long *start*, long *numsamples*, long *decimation*, long *output\_id*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments**

[in] <i>start</i>	Enter the index of the first sample to copy.
[in] <i>numsamples</i>	Enter the number of samples to copy from the output log.
[in] <i>decimation</i>	Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.
[in] <i>output_id</i>	Enter an output identification number.

**Return** The xPCTarget.GetOutputLog method returns output log data. You get the data for each output signal. If there is an error, this method returns VT\_ERROR, a scalar.

**Description** The xPCTarget.GetOutputLog method gets the output log and copies that log to an array. Output IDs range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of xPCTarget.GetNumOutputs. Entering 1 for *decimation* copies all values. Entering N copies every Nth value.

For *start*, the sample indices range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of xPCTarget.NumLogSamples. Get the maximum number of samples by calling the method xPCTarget.NumLogSamples.

Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the output log data.

<b>Purpose</b>	Get parameter values
<b>Prototype</b>	VARIANT GetParam(long <i>paramIdx</i> );
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
<b>Arguments</b>	[in] <i>paramIdx</i> Enter the index for a parameter.
<b>Return</b>	The xPCTarget.GetParam method returns the parameter values of a parameter.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCTarget.GetParam method gets the parameter values of a parameter identified by <i>paramIdx</i> . This method returns an array of type VARIANT containing the parameter values, with the conversion of the values being done in column-major format. Each element in the array is a double, regardless of the data type of the actual parameter. You can query the dimensions of the array by calling the method xPCTarget.GetParamDims. See the Microsoft® Visual Basic® .NET 2003 Demo solution located in C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api\VBNET\SigsAndParamsDemo for an example of how to use this method.
<b>See Also</b>	API method xPCTarget.GetParamDims, xPCTarget.SetParam Microsoft Visual Basic .NET 2003 demo solution located in C:\matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api\VBNET\SigsAndParamsDemo

# xPCTarget.GetParamDims

---

**Purpose** Get row and column dimensions of parameter

**Prototype** VARIANT GetParamDims(long *paramIdx*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments** [in] *paramIdx* Parameter index.

**Return** The xPCTarget.GetParamDims method returns a VARIANT array of two elements.

**Description** The xPCTarget.GetParamDims method gets a VARIANT array of two elements. The first element contains the number of rows of the parameter, the second element contains the number of columns for your parameter.



<b>Purpose</b>	Get parameter index				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long GetParamIdx(BSTR <i>blockName</i>, BSTR <i>paramName</i>);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>blockName</i></td><td>Enter the full block path generated by the Real-Time Workshop® software.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>paramName</i></td><td>Enter the parameter name for a parameter associated with the block.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>blockName</i>	Enter the full block path generated by the Real-Time Workshop® software.	[in] <i>paramName</i>	Enter the parameter name for a parameter associated with the block.
[in] <i>blockName</i>	Enter the full block path generated by the Real-Time Workshop® software.				
[in] <i>paramName</i>	Enter the parameter name for a parameter associated with the block.				
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetParamIdx</code> method returns the parameter index for the parameter name. If there is an error, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetParamIdx</code> method gets the parameter index for the parameter name ( <i>paramName</i> ) associated with a Simulink® block ( <i>blockName</i> ). Both <i>blockName</i> and <i>paramName</i> must be identical to those generated at target application building time. The block names should be referenced from the file <i>model_namept.m</i> in the generated code, where <i>model_name</i> is the name of the model. Note that a block can have one or more parameters.				

# xPCTarget.GetParamName

---

**Purpose** Get parameter name

**Prototype** VARIANT GetParamName(long *paramIdx*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments** [in] *paramIdx* Enter a parameter index.

**Return** The xPCTarget.GetParamName method returns a VARIANT array that contains two elements, the block path and parameter name, as strings.

**Description** The xPCTarget.GetParamName method gets the parameter name and block name for a parameter with the index *paramIdx*. If *paramIdx* is invalid, xPCGetLastError returns nonzero, and the strings are unchanged. Get the parameter index with the method xPCTarget.GetParamIdx.

<b>Purpose</b>	Get sample time
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>double GetSampleTime();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget</code>
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetSampleTime</code> method returns the sample time, in seconds, of the target application. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetSampleTime</code> method gets the sample time, in seconds, of the target application. You can get the error by using the method <code>xPCGetLastError</code> .

# xPCTarget.GetSignal

---

**Purpose** Get signal value

**Prototype** `double GetSignal(long sigNum);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments** [in] *sigNum* Enter a signal number.

**Return** The xPCTarget.GetSignal method returns the current value of signal *sigNum*. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The xPCTarget.GetSignal method gets the current value of a signal. Use the xPCTarget.GetSignalIdx method to get the signal number.

# xPCTarget.GetSignalidsfromLabel

---

**Purpose** Get signal IDs from signal label

**Prototype** VARIANT GetSignalidsfromLabel(BSTR *sigLabel*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments** [in] *sigLabel* Enter a signal label.

**Return** The xPCTarget.GetSignalidsfromLabel method returns a VARIANT array of the signal elements contained in the signal *sigLabel*.

**Description** The xPCTarget.GetSignalidsfromLabel method returns a VARIANT array of the signal elements contained in the signal *sigLabel*.

This method assumes that you have labeled the signal for which you request the indices (see the **Signal name** parameter of the “Signal Properties Dialog Box” in the Simulink® documentation). Note that the xPC Target™ software refers to Simulink signal names as signal labels. The creator of the application should already know the signal name/label.

**See Also** API method xPCTarget.GetSignalLabel

# xPCTarget.GetSignalLabel

---

**Purpose** Get signal label

**Prototype** BSTR GetSignalLabel(long *sigIdx*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments** [in] *sigIdx* Enter a signal index.

**Return** The xPCTarget.GetSignalLabel method returns the label of the signal.

**Description** The xPCTarget.GetSignalLabel method copies and gets the signal label of a signal with *sigIdx*. The method returns the signal label. This method assumes that you already know the signal index.

This method assumes that you have labeled the signal for which you request the indices (see the **Signal name** parameter of the “Signal Properties Dialog Box” in the Simulink® documentation). Note that the xPC Target™ software refers to Simulink signal names as signal labels. The creator of the application should already know the signal name/label.

**See Also** API method xPCTarget.GetSignalidsfromLabel

**Purpose** Get signal index

**Prototype** `long GetSignalIdx(BSTR sigName);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments** [in] *sigName* Enter a signal name.

**Return** The `xPCTarget.GetSignalIdx` method returns the index for the signal with name *sigName*. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCTarget.GetSignalIdx` method gets the index of a signal. The name must be identical to the name generated when the application was built. You should reference the name from the file *model\_namebio.m* in the generated code, where *model\_name* is the name of the model. The creator of the application should already know the signal name.

# xPCTarget.GetSignalName

---

**Purpose** Copy signal name to character array

**Prototype** BSTR GetSignalName(long *sigIdx*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments** [in] *sigIdx* Enter a signal index.

**Return** The xPCTarget.GetSignalName method returns the name of the signal.

**Description** The xPCTarget.GetSignalName method copies and gets the signal name, including the block path, of a signal with *sigIdx*. The method returns a signal name, which makes it convenient to use in a `printf` or similar statement. This method assumes that you already know the signal index.



**Purpose** Get width of signal

**Prototype** `long GetSignalWidth(long sigIdx);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments** [in] *sigIdx* Enter the index of a signal.

**Return** The `xPCTarget.GetSignalWidth` method returns the signal width for a signal with *sigIdx*. If there is an error, this method returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCTarget.GetSignalWidth` method gets the number of signals for a specified signal index. Although signals are manipulated as scalars, the width of the signal might be useful to reassemble the components into a vector. A signal's width is the number of signals in the vector.

# xPCTarget.GetStateLog

---

**Purpose** Get state log

**Prototype** VARIANT GetStateLog(long *start*, long *numsamples*, long *decimation*, long *state\_id*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments**

[in] <i>start</i>	Enter the index of the first sample to copy.
[in] <i>numsamples</i>	Enter the number of samples to copy from the output log.
[in] <i>decimation</i>	Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.
[in] <i>state_id</i>	Enter a state identification number.
[out, retval] <i>Outarray</i>	The log is stored in <i>Outarray</i> , whose allocation is the responsibility of the caller.

**Return** The xPCTarget.GetStateLog method returns the state log. If there is an error, this method returns VT\_ERROR, a scalar.

**Description** The xPCTarget.GetStateLog method gets the state log. You get the data for each state signal in turn by specifying the *state\_id*. State IDs range from 1 to (N-1), where N is the return value of xPCTarget.GetNumStates. Entering 1 for *decimation* copies all values. Entering N copies every Nth value. For *start*, the sample indices range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of xPCTarget.NumLogSamples. Use the xPCTarget.NumLogSamples method to get the maximum number of samples.

Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.

<b>Purpose</b>	Get stop time
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>double GetStopTime();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetStopTime</code> method returns the stop time as a double, in seconds, of the target application. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.GetStopTime</code> method gets the stop time, in seconds, of the target application. This is the amount of time the target application runs before stopping.

# xPCTarget.GetTETLog

---

**Purpose** Get TET log

**Prototype** VARIANT GetTETLog(long *start*, long *numsamples*, long *decimation*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget

**Arguments**

[in] <i>start</i>	Enter the index of the first sample to copy.
[in] <i>numsamples</i>	Enter the number of samples to copy from the TET log.
[in] <i>decimation</i>	Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.
[out, retval] <i>Outarray</i>	The log is stored in <i>Outarray</i> , whose allocation is the responsibility of the caller.

**Return** The xPCTarget.GetTETLog method returns the TET log. If there is an error, this method returns VT\_ERROR, a scalar.

**Description** The xPCTarget.GetTETLog method gets the task execution time (TET) log. Entering 1 for *decimation* copies all values. Entering N copies every Nth value. For *start*, the sample indices range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of xPCTarget.NumLogSamples. Use the xPCTarget.NumLogSamples method to get the maximum number of samples.

Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.

<b>Purpose</b>	Get time log						
<b>Prototype</b>	VARIANT GetTimeLog(long <i>start</i> , long <i>numsamples</i> , long <i>decimation</i> );						
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget						
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>start</i></td><td>Enter the index of the first sample to copy.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>numsamples</i></td><td>Enter the number of samples to copy from the time log.</td></tr><tr><td>[in] <i>decimation</i></td><td>Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>start</i>	Enter the index of the first sample to copy.	[in] <i>numsamples</i>	Enter the number of samples to copy from the time log.	[in] <i>decimation</i>	Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.
[in] <i>start</i>	Enter the index of the first sample to copy.						
[in] <i>numsamples</i>	Enter the number of samples to copy from the time log.						
[in] <i>decimation</i>	Select whether to copy all the sample values or every Nth value.						
<b>Return</b>	The xPCTarget.GetTimeLog method returns the time log. If there is an error, this method returns VT_ERROR, a scalar.						
<b>Description</b>	<p>The xPCTarget.GetTimeLog method gets the time log. This is especially relevant in the case of value-equidistant logging, where the logged values are not necessarily uniformly spaced in time. Entering 1 for <i>decimation</i> copies all values. Entering N copies every Nth value. For <i>start</i>, the sample indices range from 0 to (N-1), where N is the return value of xPCTarget.NumLogSamples. Use the xPCTarget.NumLogSamples method to get the number of samples.</p> <p>Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.</p>						

## xPCTarget.GetxPCError

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Get error string
<b>Prototype</b>	BSTR GetxPCError();
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The xPCTarget.GetxPCError method returns the string for the last reported error. If there is no error, this method returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCTarget.GetxPCError method gets the string of the error last reported by another COM API method. This value is reset every time you call a new method. Therefore, you should check this constant value immediately after a call to an API COM method. You can use this method in conjunction with the xPCTarget.isxPCError method, which detects that an error has occurred.
<b>See Also</b>	API method xPCTarget.isxPCError

<b>Purpose</b>	Initialize target object to communicate with target PC
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long Init(IxPCProtocol* xPCProtocol);</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	<p>If there is an error, this method returns -1. Upon success, this method returns 0.</p> <p>If the xPCTarget.Init method initializes the target object successfully, it returns 0. If the target object fails to initialize, this method returns -1.</p>
<b>Description</b>	The xPCTarget.Init method initializes the target object to communicate with the target PC referenced by the xPCProtocol object.

# xPCTarget.IsAppRunning

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return running status for target application
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long IsAppRunning();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget</code>
<b>Return</b>	If the target application is stopped, the <code>xPCTarget.IsAppRunning</code> method returns 0. If the target application is running, this method returns 1. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.IsAppRunning</code> method returns 1 or 0 depending on whether the target application is stopped or running.



<b>Purpose</b>	Return overload status for target PC
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long IsOverloaded();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLib.xPCTarget</code>
<b>Return</b>	If the application is running properly, the <code>xPCTarget.IsOverloaded</code> method returns 1. If the CPU is overloaded, this method returns 0. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.IsOverloaded</code> method returns 1 if the target application is running properly and has not overloaded the CPU. It returns 0 if the target application has overloaded the target PC (CPU Overload).

# xPCTarget.isxPCError

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return error status
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long isxPCError();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.isxPCError</code> method returns the error status. If there is an error, this method returns 0.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.isxPCError</code> method returns the error status. Use this method to check for any errors that might occur after a call to any of the <code>xPCTarget</code> class methods. If there is an error, call the <code>xPCTarget.GetxPCError</code> method to get the string for the error.
<b>See Also</b>	API method <code>xPCTarget.GetxPCError</code>

**Purpose** Load target application onto target PC

**Prototype** long LoadApp(BSTR *pathstr*, BSTR *filename*);

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget

**Arguments**

[in] <i>pathstr</i>	Enter the full path to the target application file, excluding the file name. For example, in C, use a string like "C:\\work", in Microsoft® Visual Basic®, use a string like 'C:\\work'.
[in] <i>filename</i>	Enter the name of a compiled target application (*.d1m) without the file extension. For example, in C use a string like "xpcosc", in Microsoft Visual Basic, use a string like 'xpcosc'.

**Return** If there is an error, this method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The xPCTarget.LoadApp method loads the compiled target application to the target PC. *pathstr* must not contain the trailing backslash. *pathstr* can be set to NULL or to the string 'nopath' if the application is in the current directory. The variable *filename* must not contain the target application extension.

Before returning, xPCTarget.LoadApp waits for a certain amount of time before checking whether the model initialization is complete. In the case where the model initialization is incomplete, xPCTarget.LoadApp returns a timeout error to indicate a connection problem (for example, ETCPREAD). By default, xPCTarget.LoadApp checks for target readiness five times, with each attempt taking approximately 1 second (less if the target is ready). However, in the case of larger models or models requiring longer initialization (for example, those with thermocouple boards), the default of about 5 seconds might be

## xPCTarget.LoadApp

---

insufficient and a spurious timeout can be generated. The methods `xPCProtocol.GetLoadTimeOut` and `xPCProtocol.SetLoadTimeOut` control the number of attempts made.

<b>Purpose</b>	Copy maximum task execution time to array
<b>Prototype</b>	VARIANT MaximumTET();
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The xPCTarget.MaximumTET method returns a VARIANT object containing the maximum task execution time (TET) and the time at which the maximum TET was achieved. The maximum TET value is copied into the first element, and the time at which it was achieved is copied into the second element.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCTarget.MaximumTET method returns the maximum TET that was achieved during the previous target application run.

# xPCTarget.MaxLogSamples

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return maximum number of samples that can be in log buffer
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long MaxLogSamples();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget</code>
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.MaxLogSamples</code> method returns the total number of samples. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>xPCTarget.MaxLogSamples</code> method returns the total number of samples that can be returned in the logging buffers.</p> <p>Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.</p>

<b>Purpose</b>	Copy minimum task execution time to array
<b>Prototype</b>	VARIANT MinimumTET();
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The xPCTarget.MinimumTET method returns a VARIANT object containing the minimum task execution time (TET) and the time at which the minimum TET was achieved. The minimum TET value is copied into the first element, and the time at which it was achieved is copied into the second element.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCTarget.MinimumTET method returns the minimum task execution time (TET) that was achieved during the previous target application run.

# xPCTarget.NumLogSamples

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Return number of samples in log buffer
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long NumLogSamples();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	<code>XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget</code>
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.NumLogSamples</code> method returns the number of samples in the log buffer. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>xPCTarget.NumLogSamples</code> method returns the number of samples in the log buffer. In contrast to <code>xPCTarget.MaxLogSamples</code>, which returns the maximum number of samples that can be logged (because of buffer size constraints), <code>xPCTarget.NumLogSamples</code> returns the number of samples actually logged.</p> <p>Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.</p>



<b>Purpose</b>	Return number of times log buffer wraps
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long NumLogWraps();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.NumLogWraps</code> method returns the number of times the log buffer wraps. If there is an error, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>xPCTarget.NumLogWraps</code> method returns the number of times the log buffer wraps.</p> <p>Note that the target application must be stopped before you get the number.</p>

# xPCTarget.SetParam

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Change parameter value				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long SetParam(long <i>paramIdx</i>, SAFEARRAY(double)* <i>newparamVal</i>);</code>				
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td>[in] <i>paramIdx</i></td><td>Parameter index.</td></tr><tr><td>[in, out] <i>newparamVal</i></td><td>Vector with at least the correct size.</td></tr></table>	[in] <i>paramIdx</i>	Parameter index.	[in, out] <i>newparamVal</i>	Vector with at least the correct size.
[in] <i>paramIdx</i>	Parameter index.				
[in, out] <i>newparamVal</i>	Vector with at least the correct size.				
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCTarget.SetParam</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.SetParam</code> method sets the parameter <i>paramIdx</i> to the value in <i>newparamVal</i> . For matrices, <i>newparamVal</i> should be a vector representation of the matrix in column-major format. Although <i>newparamVal</i> is a vector of doubles, the method converts the values to the correct types (using truncation) before setting them.				
<b>See Also</b>	API methods <code>xPCTarget.GetParam</code> , <code>xPCTarget.GetParamDims</code> , <code>xPCTarget.GetParamIdx</code>				

<b>Purpose</b>	Change sample time for target application
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long SetSampleTime(double ts);</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget
<b>Arguments</b>	[in] <i>ts</i> Sample time for the target application.
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCTarget.SetSampleTime</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.SetSampleTime</code> method sets the sample time, in seconds, of the target application to <i>ts</i> . Use this method only when the application is stopped.

# xPCTarget.SetStopTime

---

**Purpose** Change stop time of target application

**Prototype** `long SetStopTime(double tfinal);`

**Member Of** XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget

**Arguments** [in] *tfinal* Enter the stop time, in seconds.

**Return** If there is an error, the xPCTarget.SetStopTime method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.

**Description** The xPCTarget.SetStopTime method sets the stop time of the target application to the value in *tfinal*. The target application will run for this number of seconds before stopping. Set *tfinal* to -1.0 to set the stop time to infinity.

<b>Purpose</b>	Start target application
<b>Prototype</b>	long StartApp()
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the xPCTarget.StartApp method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCTarget.StartApp method starts the target application loaded on the target machine.

# xPCTarget.StopApp

---

<b>Purpose</b>	Stop target application
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long StopApp();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the <code>xPCTarget.StopApp</code> method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTarget.StopApp</code> method stops the target application loaded on the target PC. The target application remains loaded, and all parameter changes made remain intact. If you want to stop and unload an application, use <code>xPCTarget.UnLoadApp</code> .

<b>Purpose</b>	Unload target application
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>long UnLoadApp();</code>
<b>Member Of</b>	XPCAPICOMLIB.xPCTarget
<b>Return</b>	If there is an error, the xPCTarget.UnLoadApp method returns 0. Upon success, this method returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The xPCTarget.UnLoadApp method stops the current target application, removes it from the target PC memory, and resets the target PC in preparation for receiving a new target application. The method xPCTarget.LoadApp calls this method before loading a new target application.

# xPCTargetPing

---

**Purpose** Ping target PC

**Prototype** `int xPCTargetPing(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Return** The `TargetPing` function does not return an error status. This function returns 1 if it successfully reaches the target. If the target PC does not respond, the function returns 0.

**Description** The `xPCTargetPing` function pings the target PC and returns 1 or 0 depending on whether the target responds or not. This function returns an error string constant only when the input is incorrect (the port number is invalid or *port* is not open). All other errors, such as the inability to connect to the target, are ignored.

If you are using TCP/IP, note that `xPCTargetPing` will cause the target PC to close the TCP/IP connection. You can use `xPCOpenConnection` to reconnect. You can also use this `xPCTargetPing` feature to close the target PC connection in the event of an aborted TCP/IP connection (for example, if your host side program crashes).

**See Also** API functions `xPCOpenConnection`, `xPCOpenSerialPort`, `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`, `xPCClosePort`



<b>Purpose</b>	Get status of grid line for particular scope				
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCTgScGetGrid(int port, int scNum);</code>				
<b>Arguments</b>	<table><tr><td><i>port</i></td><td>Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code>.</td></tr><tr><td><i>scNum</i></td><td>Enter the scope number.</td></tr></table>	<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .	<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .				
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.				
<b>Return</b>	Returns the status of the grid for a scope of type <code>SCTYPE_TARGET</code> . If there is an error, this function returns -1.				
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTgScGetGrid</code> function gets the state of the grid lines for scope <i>scNum</i> (which must be of type <code>SCTYPE_TARGET</code> ). A return value of 1 implies grid on, while 0 implies grid off. Note that when the scope mode (as set or retrieved by <code>xPCTgScGetMode/xPCTgScSetMode</code> ) is set to <code>SCMODE_NUMERICAL</code> , the grid is not drawn even when the grid mode is set to 1. Use the <code>xPCGetScopes</code> function to get a list of scopes.				
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCGetScopes</code> , <code>xPCTgScSetGrid</code> , <code>xPCTgScSetViewMode</code> , <code>xPCTgScGetViewMode</code> , <code>xPCTgScSetMode</code> , <code>xPCTgScGetMode</code> , <code>xPCTgScSetYLimits</code> , <code>xPCTgScGetYLimits</code>				

# xPCTgScGetMode

---

**Purpose** Get scope mode for displaying signals

**Prototype** `int xPCTgScGetMode(int port, int scNum);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Return** The `xPCTgScGetMode` function returns the value corresponding to the scope mode. The possible values are

- `SCMODE_NUMERICAL = 0`
- `SCMODE_REDRAW = 1`
- `SCMODE_SLIDING = 2`
- `SCMODE_ROLLING = 3`

If there is an error, this function returns -1.

**Description** The `xPCTgScGetMode` function gets the mode (`SCMODE_NUMERICAL`, `SCMODE_REDRAW`, `SCMODE_SLIDING`, `SCMODE_ROLLING`) of the scope *scNum*, which must be of type `SCTYPE_TARGET`. Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCTgScSetGrid`, `xPCTgScGetGrid`, `xPCTgScSetViewMode`, `xPCTgScGetViewMode`, `xPCTgScSetMode`, `xPCTgScSetYLimits`, `xPCTgScGetYLimits`

Scope object property `Mode`

<b>Purpose</b>	Get view mode for target PC display
<b>Prototype</b>	<code>int xPCTgScGetViewMode(int <i>port</i>);</code>
<b>Arguments</b>	<i>port</i> Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<b>Return</b>	The <code>xPCTgScGetViewMode</code> function returns the view mode for the target PC screen. If there is an error, this function returns -1.
<b>Description</b>	The <code>xPCTgScGetViewMode</code> function gets the view (zoom) mode for the target PC display. If the returned value is not zero, the number is of the scope currently displayed on the screen. If the value is 0, then all defined scopes are currently displayed on the target PC screen. In the latter case, no scopes are in focus (that is, all scopes are unzoomed).
<b>See Also</b>	API functions <code>xPCGetScopes</code> , <code>xPCTgScSetGrid</code> , <code>xPCTgScGetGrid</code> , <code>xPCTgScSetViewMode</code> , <code>xPCTgScSetMode</code> , <code>xPCTgScGetMode</code> , <code>xPCTgScSetYLimits</code> , <code>xPCTgScGetYLimits</code> Target object property <code>ViewMode</code>

# xPCTgScGetYLimits

---

**Purpose** Copy *y*-axis limits for scope to array

**Prototype** `void xPCTgScGetYLimits(int port, int scNum, double *limits);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>limits</i>	The first element of the array is the lower limit while the second element is the upper limit.

**Description** The `xPCTgScGetYLimits` function gets and copies the upper and lower limits for a scope of type `SCTYPE_TARGET` and with scope number *scNum*. The limits are stored in the array *limits*. If both elements are zero, the limits are autoscaled. Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCTgScSetGrid`, `xPCTgScGetGrid`, `xPCTgScSetViewMode`, `xPCTgScGetViewMode`, `xPCTgScSetMode`, `xPCTgScGetMode`, `xPCTgScSetYLimits`

Scope object property `YLimit`

**Purpose** Set grid mode for scope

**Prototype** void xPCTgScSetGrid(int *port*, int *scNum*, int *grid*);

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function xPCOpenSerialPort or the function xPCOpenTcpIpPort.
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>grid</i>	Enter a grid value.

**Description** The xPCTgScSetGrid function sets the grid of a scope of type SCTYPE\_TARGET and scope number *scNum* to *grid*. If *grid* is 0, the grid is off. If *grid* is 1, the grid is on and grid lines are drawn on the scope window. When the drawing mode of scope *scNum* is set to SCMODE\_NUMERICAL, the grid is not drawn even when the grid mode is set to 1. Use the xPCGetScopes function to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API functions xPCGetScopes, xPCTgScGetGrid, xPCTgScSetViewMode, xPCTgScGetViewMode, xPCTgScSetMode, xPCTgScGetMode, xPCTgScSetYLimits, xPCTgScGetYLimits

Scope object property Grid

# xPCTgScSetMode

---

**Purpose** Set display mode for scope

**Prototype** `void xPCTgScSetMode(int port, int scNum, int mode);`

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function <code>xPCOpenSerialPort</code> or the function <code>xPCOpenTcpIpPort</code> .
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.
<i>mode</i>	Enter the value for the mode.

**Description** The `xPCTgScSetMode` function sets the mode of a scope of type `SCTYPE_TARGET` and scope number *scNum* to *mode*. You can use one of the following constants for *mode*:

- `SCMODE_NUMERICAL = 0`
- `SCMODE_REDRAW = 1`
- `SCMODE_SLIDING = 2`
- `SCMODE_ROLLING = 3`

Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCTgScSetGrid`, `xPCTgScGetGrid`, `xPCTgScSetViewMode`, `xPCTgScGetViewMode`, `xPCTgScGetMode`, `xPCTgScSetYLimits`, `xPCTgScGetYLimits`

Scope object property `Mode`

**Purpose** Set view mode for scope

**Prototype** void xPCTgScSetViewMode(int *port*, int *scNum*);

**Arguments**

<i>port</i>	Enter the value returned by either the function xPCOpenSerialPort or the function xPCOpenTcpIpPort.
<i>scNum</i>	Enter the scope number.

**Description** The xPCTgScSetViewMode function sets the target PC screen to display one scope with scope number *scNum*. If you set *scNum* to 0, the target PC screen displays all the scopes. Use the xPCGetScopes function to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API functions xPCGetScopes, xPCTgScSetGrid, xPCTgScGetGrid, xPCTgScGetViewMode, xPCTgScSetMode, xPCTgScGetMode, xPCTgScSetYLimits, xPCTgScGetYLimits  
Target object property ViewMode

# xPCTgScSetYLimits

---

**Purpose** Set *y*-axis limits for scope

**Prototype** `void xPCTgScSetYLimits(int port, int scNum, const double *Ylimits);`

**Arguments**

*port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

*scNum* Enter the scope number.

*Ylimits* Enter a two-element array.

**Description** The `xPCTgScSetYLimits` function sets the *y*-axis limits for a scope with scope number *scNum* and type `SCTYPE_TARGET` to the values in the double array *Ylimits*. The first element is the lower limit, and the second element is the upper limit. Set both limits to 0.0 to specify autoscaling. Use the `xPCGetScopes` function to get a list of scopes.

**See Also** API functions `xPCGetScopes`, `xPCTgScSetGrid`, `xPCTgScGetGrid`, `xPCTgScSetViewMode`, `xPCTgScGetViewMode`, `xPCTgScSetMode`, `xPCTgScGetMode`, `xPCTgScGetYLimits`

Scope object property `Ylimit`



**Purpose** Unload target application

**Prototype** `void xPCUnloadApp(int port);`

**Arguments** *port* Enter the value returned by either the function `xPCOpenSerialPort` or the function `xPCOpenTcpIpPort`.

**Description** The `xPCUnloadApp` function stops the current target application, removes it from the target PC memory, and resets the target PC in preparation for receiving a new target application. The function `xPCLoadApp` calls this function before loading a new target application.

**See Also** API function `xPCLoadApp`  
Target object methods `load`, `unload`

# xPCUnloadApp

---

# xPC Target™ C API Error Messages

---

The header file `matlabroot\toolbox\rtw\targets\xpc\api\xpcapiconst.h` defines these error messages.

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
ECOMPORACCFAIL	COM port access failed
ECOMPORISOPEN	COM port is already opened
ECOMPORREAD	ReadFile failed while reading from COM port
ECOMPORWRITE	WriteFile failed while writing to COM port
ECOMTIMEOUT	timeout while receiving: check serial link
EINVFILENAME	Invalid file name
EFILEOPEN	Error opening file
EFILEREAD	Error reading file
EFILERENAME	Error renaming file
EFILEWRITE	Error writing file
EINTERNAL	Internal Error
EINVADDR	Invalid IP Address
EINVALIDMODEL	Model name does not match saved value
EINVBAUDRATE	Invalid value for baudrate
EINVCOMMTYP	Invalid communication type
EINVCOMPORT	COM port can only be 0 or 1 (COM1 or COM2)
EINVLOGID	Invalid log identifier

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
EINVNUMPARAMS	Invalid number of parameters
EINVNUMSIGNALS	Invalid number of signals
EINVPARIDX	Invalid parameter index
EINVPORT	Invalid Port Number
EINVSCIDX	Invalid Scope Index
EINVSTYPE	Invalid Scope type
EINVSIGIDX	Invalid Signal index
EINVTRIGMODE	Invalid trigger mode
EINVTRIGSLOPE	Invalid Trigger Slope Value
EINVTRSCIDX	Invalid Trigger Scope index
EINVARGUMENT	Invalid Argument
EINVDECIMATION	Decimation must be positive
EINVLGDATA	Invalid lgdata structure
EINVLGINCR	Invalid increment for value equidistant logging
EINVLGMODE	Invalid Logging mode
EINVNUMSAMP	Number of samples must be nonnegative
EINVSTARTVAL	Invalid value for "start"
EINVTFIN	Invalid value for TFinal
EINVTS	Invalid value for Ts (must be between 8e-6 and 10)
EINWVSVER	Invalid Winsock version (1.1 needed)
EINXPCVERSION	Target has an invalid version of xPC Target
ELOADAPPFIRST	Load the application first
ELOGGINGDISABLED	Logging is disabled
EMALFORMED	Malformed message
EMEMALLOC	Memory allocation error
ENODATALOGGED	No data has been logged

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
ENOERR	No error
ENOFREEPORT	No free Port in C API
ENOMORECHANNELS	No more channels in scope
ENOSPACE	Space not allocated
EPARNOTFOUND	Parameter not found
EPARSIZMISMATCH	Parameter Size mismatch
EPINGCONNECT	Could not connect to Ping socket
EPINGPORTOPEN	Error opening Ping port
EPINGSOCKET	Ping socket error
EPORTCLOSED	Port is not open
ERUNSIMFIRST	Run simulation first
ESCTYPENOTTGT	Scope Type is not "Target"
ESIGNOTFOUND	Signal not found
ESOCKOPEN	Socket Open Error
ESTARTSIMFIRST	Start simulation first
ESTOPSCFIRST	Stop scope first
ESTOPSIMFIRST	Stop simulation first
ETCPCONNECT	TCP/IP Connect Error
ETCPREAD	TCP/IP Read Error
ETCPTIMEOUT	TCP/IP timeout while receiving data
ETCPWRITE	TCP/IP Write error
ETETLOGDISABLED	TET Logging is disabled
ETGTMEMALLOC	Target memory allocation failed
ETOOMANYSAMPLES	Too Many Samples requested
ETOOMANYSCOPES	Too many scopes are present
EUNLOADAPPFIRST	Unload the application first
EUSEDYNSCOPE	Use DYNAMIC_SCOPE flag at compile time

<b>Message</b>	<b>Description</b>
EWRITEFILE	LoadDLM: WriteFile Error
EWSINIT	WINSOCK: Initialization Error
EWSNOTREADY	Winsock not ready

## A

- applications
  - deploying 3-46
  - xPC Target API 2-1
  - xPC Target COM API 3-1

## B

- block parameters
  - tagging 3-8
- block signals
  - tagging 3-11

## C

- COM API methods
  - communication objects 5-10
  - file system objects 5-15
  - scope objects 5-11
  - target objects 5-13
  - xPCFileSystem 5-15
  - xPCProtocol 5-10
  - xPCScopes 5-11
  - xPCTarget 5-13
- COM applications 3-1
  - before you start 3-2
  - demos 4-1
    - Microsoft Visual Basic 6.0 demo 4-5
    - Microsoft Visual Basic 7.0 demo 4-2
    - Tcl/Tk scripts 4-8
    - Visual Basic 3-4
    - xpctank 3-5
- custom applications
  - Visual C example 2-5
  - xPC Target COM API 3-1
- custom C applications
  - before you start 2-2
  - example 2-5
  - guidelines 2-2

- custom GUI
  - COM objects 3-4
- custom Visual Basic applications
  - before you start 3-2
  - building 3-45
  - creating 3-21
  - creating event procedures 3-35
  - creating general declarations 3-33
  - creating load procedure 3-33
  - example 3-4
  - graphical interface 3-27
  - setting properties 3-29
  - writing code 3-31

## D

- diskinfo structure 6-4

## G

- GUI creation 3-1

## L

- lgmode structure 6-11

## M

- model-specific COM library
  - classes 3-18
  - creating 3-14
  - parameter class 3-20
  - referencing 3-22
  - signal class 3-19

## P

- parameters
  - tagging 3-8

**S**

- scopedata structure 6-12
- signals
  - tagging 3-11

**T**

- tagging block parameters 3-7
- tagging block signals 3-11
- target application
  - running API application 2-12
  - using 2-13
- target applications
  - building 2-7

**V**

- Visual Basic example 3-4
  - building 3-45
  - creating event procedures 3-35
  - creating general declarations 3-33
  - creating load procedure 3-33
  - creating new 3-21
  - graphical interface 3-27
  - referencing without tags 3-41
  - setting properties 3-29
  - tagging block parameters 3-8
  - tagging block signals 3-11
  - testing 3-45
  - writing code 3-31
- Visual C example
  - building 2-12
  - C code 2-19
  - creating 2-7

**X**

- xPC Target API 2-1
  - application creation 2-1
  - example 2-5

- introduction 1-4
- overview 1-2
- xPC Target COM API 3-1
  - GUI creation 3-1
  - introduction 1-6
  - overview 1-2
- xPCAddScope function 6-15
- xPCAverageTET function 6-16
- xPCCloseConnection function 6-17
- xPCClosePort function 6-18
- xPCDeRegisterTarget function 6-19
- xPCErrorMsg function 6-20
- xPCFileSystem 5-15
  - xPCFileSystem.CD method 6-21
  - xPCFileSystem.CloseFile method 6-22
  - xPCFileSystem.GetFileSize method 6-25
  - xPCFileSystem.Init method 6-26
  - xPCFileSystem.MKDIR method 6-27
  - xPCFileSystem.OpenFile method 6-28
  - xPCFileSystem.PWD method 6-29
  - xPCFileSystem.ReadFile method 6-30
  - xPCFileSystem.RemoveFile method 6-31
  - xPCFileSystem.RMDIR method 6-32
  - xPCFileSystem.ScGetFileName method 6-33
  - xPCFileSystem.ScGetWriteMode method 6-34
  - xPCFileSystem.ScGetWriteSize method 6-35
  - xPCFileSystem.ScSetFileName method 6-36
  - xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteMode method 6-37
  - xPCFileSystem.ScSetWriteSize method 6-38
  - xPCFileSystem.WriteFile method 6-39
- xPCFreeAPI function 6-40
- xPCFSCD function 6-41
- xPCFSCloseFile function 6-42
- xPCFSDir function 6-43
- xPCFSDirSize function 6-45
- xPCFSDiskInfo function 6-47
- xPCFSGetError function 6-48
- xPCFSGetFileSize function 6-49
- xPCFSGetPWD function 6-50
- xPCFSMKDIR function 6-51



xPCFSOpenFile function 6-52  
xPCFSReadFile function 6-53  
xPCFSRemoveFile function 6-54  
xPCFSWriteFile function 6-62  
xPCGetAppName function 6-64  
xPCGetEcho function 6-65  
xPCGetExecTime function 6-66  
xPCGetLastError function 6-67  
xPCGetLoadTimeOut function 6-68  
xPCGetLogMode function 6-70  
xPCGetNumOutputs function 6-71  
xPCGetNumParams function 6-72  
xPCGetNumSignals function 6-73  
xPCGetNumStates function 6-74  
xPCGetOutputLog function 6-75  
xPCGetParam function 6-77  
xPCGetParamDims function 6-78  
xPCGetParamIdx function 6-79  
xPCGetParamName function 6-80  
xPCGetSampleTime function 6-81  
xPCGetScope function 6-82  
xPCGetScopes function 6-83  
xPCGetSignal function 6-84  
xPCGetSignalIdx function 6-85  
xPCGetSignalName function 6-89  
xPCGetSignals function 6-90  
xPCGetSignalWidth function 6-92  
xPCGetStateLog function 6-93  
xPCGetStopTime function 6-95  
xPCGetTETLog function 6-97  
xPCGetTimeLog function 6-98  
xPCInitAPI function 6-99  
xPCIsAppRunning function 6-100  
xPCIsOverloaded function 6-101  
xPCIsScFinished function 6-102  
xPCLoadApp function 6-103  
xPCLoadParamSet function 6-105  
xPCMaximumTET function 6-107  
xPCMaxLogSamples function 6-106  
xPCMinimumTET function 6-108  
xPCNumLogSamples function 6-109  
xPCNumLogWraps function 6-110  
xPCOpenConnection function 6-111  
xPCOpenSerialPort function 6-112  
xPCOpenTcpIpPort function 6-113  
xPCProtocol 5-10  
xPCProtocol.Close method 6-114  
xPCProtocol.GetLoadTimeOut method 6-115  
xPCProtocol.GetxPCErrorMsg method 6-116  
xPCProtocol.Init method 6-117  
xPCProtocol.isxPCError method 6-118  
xPCProtocol.Port method 6-119  
xPCProtocol.RS232Connect method 6-121  
xPCProtocol.SetLoadTimeOut method 6-122  
xPCProtocol.TargetPing method 6-123  
xPCProtocol.TcpIpConnect method 6-124  
xPCProtocol.Term method 6-125  
xPCProtocol.xPCReboot method 6-120  
xPCReboot function 6-126  
xPCRegisterTarget function 6-128  
xPCRemScope function 6-130  
xPCReOpenPort function 6-127  
xPCSaveParamSet function 6-131  
xPCScAddSignal function 6-132  
xPCScGetData function 6-133  
xPCScGetDecimation function 6-135  
xPCScGetNumPrePostSamples function 6-136  
xPCScGetNumSamples function 6-137  
xPCScGetSignals function 6-138  
xPCScGetStartTime function 6-139  
xPCScGetState function 6-140  
xPCScGetTriggerLevel function 6-142  
xPCScGetTriggerMode function 6-143  
xPCScGetTriggerScope function 6-145  
xPCScGetTriggerScopeSample function 6-146  
xPCScGetTriggerSignal function 6-147  
xPCScGetTriggerSlope function 6-148  
xPCScGetType function 6-150  
xPCScopes 5-11  
xPCScopes.AddFileScope method 6-151

- xPCScopes.AddHostScope method 6-152
- xPCScopes.AddTargetScope method 6-153
- xPCScopes.GetScopes method 6-154
- xPCScopes.GetxPCError method 6-155
- xPCScopes.Init method 6-156
- xPCScopes.IsScopeFinished method 6-157
- xPCScopes.IsxPCError method 6-158
- xPCScopes.RemScope method 6-159
- xPCScopes.ScopeAddSignal method 6-160
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetData method 6-161
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetDecimation method 6-162
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumPrePostSamples method 6-163
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetNumSamples method 6-164
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetSignals method 6-165
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetStartTime method 6-166
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetState method 6-167
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerLevel method 6-169
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerMode method 6-170
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerModeStr method 6-172
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerScopeSample method 6-173
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSignal method 6-174
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlope method 6-175
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetTriggerSlopeStr method 6-176
- xPCScopes.ScopeGetType method 6-177
- xPCScopes.ScopeRemSignal method 6-178
- xPCScopes.ScopeSetDecimation method 6-179
- xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumPrePostSamples method 6-180
- xPCScopes.ScopeSetNumSamples method 6-181
- xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerLevel method 6-182
- xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerMode method 6-183
- xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerScopeSample method 6-185
- xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSignal method 6-186
- xPCScopes.ScopeSetTriggerSlope method 6-187
- xPCScopes.ScopeStart method 6-189
- xPCScopes.ScopeStop method 6-190
- xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetMode method 6-192
- xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetModeStr method 6-193
- xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetViewMode method 6-194
- xPCScopes.TargetScopeGetYLimits method 6-195
- xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetGrid method 6-196
- xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetMode method 6-197
- xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetViewMode method 6-198
- xPCScopes.TargetScopeSetYLimits method 6-199
- xPCScopes.TargetSopecGetGrid method 6-191
- xPCScRemSignal function 6-200
- xPCScSetDecimation function 6-201
- xPCScSetNumPrePostSamples function 6-202
- xPCScSetNumSamples function 6-203
- xPCScSetTriggerLevel function 6-204
- xPCScSetTriggerMode function 6-205
- xPCScSetTriggerScope function 6-207
- xPCScSetTriggerScopeSample function 6-208
- xPCScSetTriggerSignal function 6-209
- xPCScSetTriggerSlope function 6-210
- xPCScSoftwareTrigger function 6-212
- xPCScStart function 6-213
- xPCScStop function 6-214
- xPCSetEcho function 6-215
- xPCSetLastError function 6-216
- xPCSetLoadTimeOut function 6-217

xPCSetLogMode function 6-218  
xPCSetParam function 6-219  
xPCSetSampleTime function 6-220  
xPCSetScope function 6-221  
xPCSetStopTime function 6-222  
xPCStartApp function 6-223  
xPCStopApp function 6-224  
xpctank model 3-5  
xPCTarget 5-13  
xPCTarget.AverageTET method 6-225  
xPCTarget.GetAppName method 6-226  
xPCTarget.GetExecTime method 6-227  
xPCTarget.GetNumOutputs method 6-228  
xPCTarget.GetNumParams method 6-229  
xPCTarget.GetNumSignals method 6-230  
xPCTarget.GetNumStates method 6-231  
xPCTarget.GetOutputLog method 6-232  
xPCTarget.GetParam method 6-233  
xPCTarget.GetParamDims method 6-234  
xPCTarget.GetParamIdx method 6-235  
xPCTarget.GetParamName method 6-236  
xPCTarget.GetSampleTime method 6-237  
xPCTarget.GetSignal method 6-238  
xPCTarget.GetSignalIdx method 6-241  
xPCTarget.GetSignalName method 6-242  
xPCTarget.GetSignalWidth method 6-243  
xPCTarget.GetStateLog method 6-244  
xPCTarget.GetStopTime method 6-245  
xPCTarget.GetTETLog method 6-246  
xPCTarget.GetTimeLog method 6-247  
xPCTarget.GetxPCError method 6-248  
xPCTarget.Init method 6-249  
xPCTarget.IsAppRunning method 6-250  
xPCTarget.IsOverloaded method 6-251  
xPCTarget.isxPCError method 6-252  
xPCTarget.LoadApp method 6-253  
xPCTarget.MaximumTET method 6-255  
xPCTarget.MaxLogSamples method 6-256  
xPCTarget.MinimumTET method 6-257  
xPCTarget.NumLogSamples method 6-258  
xPCTarget.NumLogWraps method 6-259  
xPCTarget.SetParam method 6-260  
xPCTarget.SetSampleTime method 6-261  
xPCTarget.SetStopTime method 6-262  
xPCTarget.StartApp method 6-263  
xPCTarget.StopApp method 6-264  
xPCTarget.UnloadApp method 6-265  
xPCTargetPing function 6-266  
xPCTgScGetGrid function 6-267  
xPCTgScGetMode function 6-268  
xPCTgScGetViewMode function 6-269  
xPCTgScGetYLimits function 6-270  
xPCTgScSetGrid function 6-271  
xPCTgScSetMode function 6-272  
xPCTgScSetViewMode function 6-273  
xPCTgScSetYLimits function 6-274  
xPCUnloadApp function 6-275